EUROPEAN SMOKING CESSATION GUIDELINES

The authoritative guide to a comprehensive understanding of the implications and implementation of treatments and strategies to help quit smoking, including Quality Standards.

ENSP QS

ISBN: 978-2-9600708-1-1

Responsible Publisher: Panagiotis K. Behrakis, President ENSP
European Network for Smoking and Tobacco Prevention aisbl (ENSP)
Chaussée d'Ixelles 144
B-1050 Brussels, Belgium
Tel. : +32 2 2306515
Fax: +32 2 2307507
E-mail: info@ensp.org
Internet: www.ensp.org

Co-funded by
The Health Programme of the European Union

This project has received financial support from the European Commission in the framework of the EU Public Health Programme 2008-2013. Neither ENSP nor the European Commission nor any person acting on their behalf can be held responsible for any use that may be made of the information contained in this document.

The production of this report has been supported by unrestricted educational grants from Pfizer Limited and Servier Pharma. This report does not necessarily reflect the views of either Pfizer Limited or Servier Pharma, and the content and recommendations are those of the ENSP Editorial Board and not the supporting pharmaceutical companies.

European Smoking Cessation Guidelines:
The authoritative guide to a comprehensive understanding of the implications and implementation of treatments and strategies to treat tobacco dependence.
1st edition. October 2012

ENSP

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acknowledgements

ENSP wishes to thank the Editorial Board for their kind contributions:

Panagiotis K. Behrakis, MD, PhD (McGill), FCCP, President of ENSP, is Associate Professor of Respiratory Physiology at Athens University and Adjunct Professor at Harvard University;
Nazmi Bilir, Professor of Public Health, Hacettepe University, Faculty of Medicine, Department of Public Health, Ankara, Turkey;
Luke Clancy, BSc, MB, MD, PhD, FRCPI, FRCP (Edin), FCCP, FFOM, respiratory physician and Director General, TobaccoFree Research Institute Ireland (TFRI);
Bertrand Dautzenberg, Professor of Chest Medicine at Pitié-Salpêtrière hospital, Paris and Chair of Office français de prévention du tabagisme (OFT), Paris, France;
Andrey Konstantinovich Demin, M.D., D.Polit.Sci., is a physician at the Medical and Rehabilitation Centre under the Ministry of Health of the Russian Federation, Professor of Public Health at I.M. Sechenov 1st Moscow State Medical University and N.I. Pirogov National Medical Surgical Centre, and President of Russian Public Health Association, Moscow, Russia;
Hans Gilljam, MD, Professor of Public Health, Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden;
Antigona Trofor, M.D. Ph.D., Associate Professor of Pulmonology at the University of Medicine and Pharmacy Gr. T. Popa, Iași and Respiratory Physician at the Clinic of Pulmonary Diseases, Iași, Romania.

ENSP likewise wishes to thank the Board of Revisors for their kind contributions:

Sofia Cattaruzza, head of UNITAB, Sapienza University, Rome, Italy;
Florin Dumitru Mihălțan, Professor of Pneumology, M. Nasta National Institute of Pneumology, President of the Romanian Society of Pneumology, Bucharest, Romania;
Manfred Neuberger, O. Univ.-Prof. M.D., Vienna, Austria;
Biagio Tinghino, President of the Società Italiana di Tabaccologia (SITAB), co-ordinator of the working group on SITAB Guidelines, head of the Smoking Cessation Centre, ASL Monza e Brianza, Italy;
Paulo D. Vitória, Psychologist, PhD, Professor of Preventive Medicine at Faculdade de Ciências da Saúde – Universidade da Beira Interior. Member of the Coordination Team at Portuguese Quitline. Member of the Steering Board at Portuguese Society of Tabacology (SPT), Portugal;
Vincenzo Zagà, editor-in-chief of Tabaccologia, Società Italiana di Tabaccologia (SITAB), Bologna, Italy.
Witold A. Zatoński, Professor, M.D. , PhD. Director Division of Epidemiology and Cancer Prevention , Director WHO Collaborating Centre, Warsaw, Poland.

The ENSP-ESCG Editorial Board wishes to thank the **Romanian Society of Pulmonologists** and the Board of Editors for allowing us to use the Romanian Smokers Assistance and Smoking Cessation Guidelines (RSASCG – www.srp.ro) as a background document for this publication.
ENSP is indebted to **Cornel Radu-Loghin**, Director of Policy and Strategy at the ENSP Secretariat, for initiating and managing the project.
This publication was co-ordinated, compiled, edited and revised by **Michael Forrest**, Communications Officer at the ENSP Secretariat.

Biographies

Panagiotis K. Behrakis, MD, PhD (McGill), FCCP, President of ENSP, is Associate Professor of Respiratory Physiology at Athens University and Adjunct Professor at Harvard University. He is an MD (Athens University) with two PhDs (McGill and Athens Universities) and three medical specialties (Internal Medicine, Pulmonary Medicine and Critical Care Medicine). He is currently the Scientific Director of the Smoking and Lung Cancer Research Centre and Investigator at the Biomedical Research Foundation of the Athens Academy. He is also President of the National Steering Committee for Tobacco Control and Principal Investigator of HEART Project (a collaboration between Harvard University, the Hellenic Cancer Society and the Greek Ministries of Education and Health) for tobacco control in Greece, as well as chair of the Global Governors Council and member of the Board of the American College of Chest Physicians. In the past he has served as an auditor in a series major European projects (i.e. COPHIT, SIMBIO, BLOODSIM, BIOMED,AIM etc.), editor in eight scientific journals, editor and co-editor of seven books of physiology in Greece, supervisor of more than 30 PhD theses, author of 172 (89 international, 83 Greek) full papers and 350 (130 international, 220 Greek) abstracts accounting for 1420 citations. He has been the main organizer of more than 20 international scientific events (meetings, congresses, seminars) and has recently published a monograph *The Greek Tobacco Epidemic*, 2011, Harvard Publications.

Nazmi Bilir, is a medical doctor and professor of Public Health at Hacettepe University, Faculty of Medicine, Department of Public Health, Ankara, Turkey. He qualified as an MD in 1970, completed Internal Medicine training in 1974 and Public Health in 1976. He has worked in the field of tobacco control for more than 30 years, conducting several projects on tobacco use, prevalence and prevention. He is founder of the National Coalition on Tobacco and Health and chaired the Coalition for five years. He has participated in parliamentary commissions as an invited expert during discussions on the tobacco control law in 1996 and during the amendment of the law in 2008. He participated in the GATS (Global Adult Tobacco Survey) in 2008 as well as the review of GATS in 2012. He conducted a project on the impact of tobacco control law between 2008 and 2010. He was a member of the group that prepared and implemented the Health Professionals Tobacco Use surveys in 1997 and 2011 and was a member of the European Advisory Board on Smoking Cessation. He is one of the authors of the publication *Tobacco Control in Turkey; Story of Commitment and Leadership*, published by WHO-Europe. He currently works as a senior lecturer at Hacettepe University, Ankara.

Luke Clancy, BSc, MB, MD, PhD, FRCPI, FRCP (Edin), FCCP, FFOM, is Director General of the TobaccoFree Research Institute Ireland (TFRI). He is a respiratory physician with a research interest in air pollution, TB and asthma and currently focusing on the prevention and treatment of smoking related diseases by research, treatment of tobacco dependence and advocacy. As Chairman of the Board of ASH Ireland (Action on Smoking and Health) he played a significant role in the introduction of smoke-free legislation in Ireland. He is a past President of the European Network for Smoking and Tobacco Prevention (ENSP) and a past Chairman of the Tobacco Control Committee of the European Respiratory Society. He is Director General of TFRI which supports the development of a tobacco-free society by engaging in research in all aspects of tobacco control. He was a partner in a number of EU funded projects such as IMPASHS, IMCA PESCE, APHEA, Aphesis, and ENHIS and project co-ordinator for the DG Research FP7 Project PPACTE (Pricing Policy and Tobacco Control in Europe) involving a very strong consortium of international experts from Finland, France, Italy, Spain, UK, Belgium and USA.

Bertrand Dautzenberg is Professor of Chest Medicine at Pitié-Salpêtrière hospital in Paris, France, responsible for the tobacco unit. He has been involved in lung cancer treatment, COPD network treatment , treatment of tuberculosis and tobacco prevention and treatment. He is the Chair of Office français de prévention du tabagisme (OFT), Paris Sans Tabac (PST). He is a member of the Board of the French Alliance against Tobacco and the board of the European Network for Smoking and Tobacco Prevention (ENSP). He leads the scientific tobacco section of the European Respiratory Society (ERS). He was the leader of the ESCCAN project for tobacco cession centres. He has received a WHO medal for his work in the field of tobacco control. He is the author of several books on tobacco and a report on passive smoking for the French Ministry of Health.

Andrey Konstantinovich Demin, M.D., D.Polit.Sci. is a physician at the Medical and Rehabilitation Centre under the Ministry of Health of the Russian Federation, Professor of Public Health at I.M. Sechenov 1st Moscow State Medical University and N.I. Pirogov National Medical Surgical Centre, and President of Russian Public Health Association, Moscow, Russia. He has been involved in tobacco use prevention and control activities at national and international levels since 1992. He participated in FCTC INB meetings and has performed expertise work for the WHO, the relevant authorities of the Russian Federation and other CIS countries. He has headed numerous projects, including GYTS Russia, tobacco use and cessation, tobacco industry monitoring and denormalization, policy development. He is the founder of the Coalition for Tobacco Free Russia, 2002. He was a Fulbright fellow at GWU, Washington, D.C., visiting scholar at LSHTM, London, U.K. His publications include three relevant books and a national policy report, with a comprehensive volume *Russia: Deal is Tobacco. Investigation of Mass Killing*, 2012.

Hans Gilljam, is Professor of Public Health at the Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden. His clinical work has mainly been in lung medicine (1971-1995). He has published research on cystic fibrosis and asthma. From 1989 he was the head of Centre for Tobacco Prevention, Stockholm, founder and head of the Swedish quitline. He is the co-founder and chair of the NGO Doctors Against Tobacco. He has served as an expert for all relevant Swedish authorities, the European Commission, the UK Medical Research Council, the Norwegian Knowledge Centre for the Health Services, Folkhälsan Public Health Research Finland. He has written or co-written several books on tobacco prevention and collaborated in 10 clinical trials on tobacco cessation.

Antigona Trofor is Associate Professor of Pulmonology at the University of Medicine and Pharmacy Gr. T. Popa in Iași, and works as a pulmonologist at the Clinic of Pulmonary Diseases, Iași, Romania, in charge of in-patients suffering from tuberculosis, cancer, asthma, COPD and other respiratory diseases. She has implemented smoking cessation in her current activities at the Clinic of Pulmonary Diseases, Iași, teaches a postgraduate course in smoking cessation and has been involved in various tobacco control activities in Romania, being the chair of the Tobacco Control Section of the Romanian Society of Pulmonologists, national co-ordinator of the Adolescent Smoking Cessation programme in Romania, co-ordinator of the Romanian Smoking Cessation Guidelines, President of several national tobacco control conferences. She was member of the Tobacco Control Committee of the European Respiratory Society (ERS) and Secretary of the group Tobacco, Smoking Control and Health Education within ERS.

Declarations of Interests

The members of the Editorial Board of the ENSP Smoking Cessation Guidelines (ENSP-SCG) declare that, in 2010-2012, they collaborated with the following pharmaceutical companies:

- **Panagiotis K. Behrakis** declares to have no conflict of interest with any pharmaceutical company;
- **Nazmi Bilir** declares to have no conflict of interest with any pharmaceutical company;
- **Luke Clancy** declares that his institute was awarded a research grant by Pfizer in 2010; he received consultancy fees from Pfizer and Pierre Fabre 2010, 2011, 2012; he received lecture fees from Pfizer and Novartis in 2010,2011,2012;
- **Bertrand Dautzenberg** has collaborated for the past three years, but has refused any personal fees from Pfizer, GlaxoSmithKline, Pierre Fabre Santé;
- **Andrey Konstantinovich Demin** declares that he has no relation to the pharmaceutical industry;
- **Hans Gilljam** declares that he has no relation to the pharmaceutical industry;
- **Antigona Trofor** has received regular paid consultancy funds for clinical research work from Novartis Pharma Services Romania SRL, CROM Research Org. SRL, INC Research and Glaxo SmithKline during 2011-2012 and has received fees for occasional lectures from the European Commission, AstraZeneca, Servier Pharma SRL, Glaxo SmithKline and Pierre-Fabre during 2011-2012.

With respect to the elaboration methodology and content, these guidelines were drafted without any influence from any pharmaceutical company.

Level of evidence of recommendations in the guidelines

Table 1: The current guidelines stratify the evidence into three categories, judging by the type, quality and quantity of the referred studies.

Levels of Evidence		
Category of proof	**Sources of evidence**	**Definition**
A	Controlled and randomized trials (CRT). Large database.	Great number of studies which imply a substantial number of participants.
B	Controlled and randomized trials. Limited database.	Studies include a limited number of patients, analysis post hoc or analysis of CRT sub-groups, or meta-analysis of CRT. The randomized trials are small, on various population groups, with inconsistent results.
C	Non-randomized trials. Observational studies. Expert consensus.	Proofs from noncontrolled and non-randomized trials or observational studies.

Ms Oana Antonescu
Member of European Parliament

According to the World Health Organization (WHO), the tobacco epidemic is one of the major public health threats the world has ever faced, as it kills nearly six million people a year, of which 500,000 people are citizens of the European Union. These alarming figures compel us to take actions in order to address tobacco dependence. Dependence is not an arbitrary vocabulary, as it has been proven that tobacco dependence is a medical condition and thus must be diagnosed and treated in the same way as other chronic diseases.

Moreover, targeted actions directed at young people need to be taken in order to convince them to avoid using tobacco products, thus preventing dependence. This is of utmost importance due to the fact that consumption during adolescence becomes tobacco dependence towards the end of youth. Previous strategies have had an impact, but given the alarming numbers it is clear that we need a more direct and well adapted instrument to tackle tobacco smoking. We need to acknowledge that tobacco use is a disease and develop our strategies accordingly.

Health professionals and patients alike need to benefit from the newest and safest methods of diagnosis, from the latest research on tobacco dependence and on the effects and side-effects of smoking, and from the most successful strategies and treatments to combat this disease. One successful strategy is to establish smoke-free environments that will reduce the financial pressure on healthcare systems around the world.

The road ahead continues to be difficult and many obstacles still lie in the way of a tobacco-free Europe. These guidelines are a step in the right direction and a basis for a comprehensive and holistic approach to the treatment of tobacco dependence.

Dear Reader,

ENSP's vision is a future where our fellow Europeans will not suffer the distress of ill health and early death due to tobacco. We want children and young people to be able to grow up without being targeted with messages that seek to lure them into a lifetime of addiction. We want all Europeans to be able to breathe clean air unpolluted by tobacco smoke. We want to help smokers escape from a fatal trap. We want to put an end to the tobacco epidemic.

ENSP has thus set itself the ambitious target of making Europe totally tobacco-free by 2040. It is important to set a date and it is likewise important to repeat this aim at every opportunity in order to make this target a reality in our life-time.

We continue to invest our efforts to support the WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Control (WHO FCTC) which, we are convinced, is the most efficient tool to reach our objectives. Because we aim to create greater coherence among smoking prevention activities and to promote comprehensive tobacco control policies at both national and European levels, it is thus logical and in accordance with FCTC Article 14 to reinforce ENSP's commitment to helping smokers quit by developing these European Smoking Cessation Guidelines.

These European Smoking Cessation Guidelines are the result of a complex and extensive work by the Editorial Board, to whom ENSP is extremely grateful. We trust that these European Smoking Cessation Guidelines will provide health professionals and smokers with a complete range of tools to support their smoking cessation strategies, and we look forward to seeing more smokers' lives saved thanks to them.

Panagiotis K. Behrakis
President

Francis Grogna
Secretary General

Editorial

ENSP strongly supports Article 168 of the EC Treaty which states that:

A high level of human health protection shall be ensured in the definition and implementation of all Union policies and activities.[…] The European Parliament and the Council, acting in accordance with the ordinary legislative procedure and after consulting the Economic and Social Committee and the Committee of the Regions, may also adopt incentive measures designed to protect and improve human health and in particular to combat the major cross-border health scourges, measures concerning monitoring, early warning of and combating serious cross-border threats to health, and measures which have as their direct objective the protection of public health regarding tobacco and the abuse of alcohol, excluding any harmonization of the laws and regulations of the Member States[1].

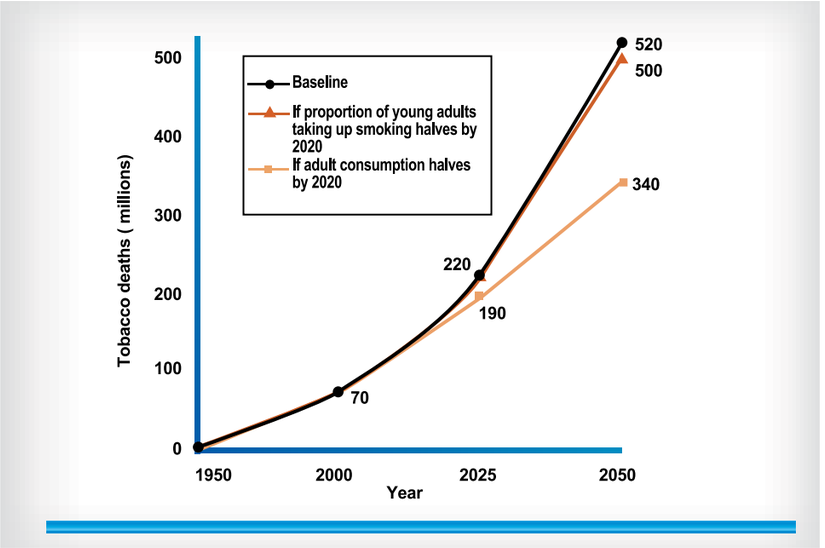
The EC's important role in health policy has been reaffirmed in the Reform Treaty which was agreed by EU Heads of State and Government in Lisbon on 19 October 2007 and which proposes to reinforce the political importance of health. A new overall aim on supporting citizens' well-being is expected, as well as an encouragement of co-operation amongst Member States on health and health services. Work on health at Community level adds value to Member States' actions, particularly in the area of prevention of illness, including work on […] tackling smoking, […][2].

According to the Eurobarometer survey published in 2012[3], more than one in every four citizen's smokes (28%) and 37% of the 25 to 39 age group are smokers. Tobacco kills 50% of its regular users, i.e. 500,000 Europeans every year.

In this context, there is an increasing consensus that Tobacco dependence is a disease that must be treated by health professionals. Any doctor and health professional must consider that tobacco use is a medical condition and not a habit, vice, pleasure, life-style etc. It is urgent to act.

Cessation interventions have a more mid-term impact on the number of deaths and therefore must be encouraged. As explained in the World Bank report *Curbing the epidemic: Governments and the economics of tobacco control*, if starting smoking is reduced by 50% by 2020, the number of deaths from tobacco will decrease from 520 to around 500 million in 2050. On the other hand, if half of the current smokers quit by 2020, the number of deaths from smoking would be reduced from 520 to 340 million in 2050 (Figure 1).

Figure 1: Unless current smokers quit tobacco deaths will rise dramatically in the next 50 years. Estimated cumulative deaths 1950-2000 with different intervention strategies. (Source: The World Bank)



Article 14 of the WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Control (WHO FCTC) states that:

Each Party shall develop and disseminate appropriate, comprehensive and integrated guidelines based on scientific evidence and best practices, taking into account national circumstances and priorities, and shall take effective measures to promote cessation of Tobacco use and adequate treatment for tobacco dependence.

The guidelines for implementation of Article 14[5]:

i. encourage Parties to strengthen or create a sustainable infrastructure which motivates attempts to quit, ensures wide access to support for tobacco users who wish to quit, and provides sustainable resources to ensure that such support is available;

ii. identify the key, effective measures needed to promote tobacco cessation and incorporate tobacco dependence treatment into national tobacco control programmes and health-care systems;

iii. urge Parties to share experiences and collaborate in order to facilitate the development or strengthening of support for tobacco cessation and tobacco dependence treatment. […]

Certain infrastructure elements will be needed to promote tobacco cessation and provide effective tobacco dependence treatment. Much of this infrastructure (such as a primary health care system) already exists in many countries. In order to promote tobacco cessation and develop Tobacco dependence treatment as rapidly as possible and at as low a cost as possible, Parties should use existing resources and infrastructure as much as they can, and ensure that tobacco users at least receive brief advice. […]

Parties should develop and disseminate comprehensive tobacco dependence treatment guidelines based on the best available scientific evidence and best practices, taking into account national circumstances and priorities. These guidelines should include two major components: (1) a national cessation strategy, to promote tobacco cessation and provide tobacco dependence treatment, aimed principally at those responsible for funding and implementing policies and programs; and (2) national treatment guidelines aimed principally at those who will develop, manage and provide cessation support to tobacco users.

A national cessation strategy and national tobacco dependence treatment guidelines should have the following key characteristics:
- *they should be evidence based;*
- *their development should be protected from all actual and potential conflicts of interest;*
- *they should be developed in collaboration with key stakeholders, including but not limited to health scientists, health professional organizations, health-care workers, educators, youth workers and non-governmental organizations with relevant expertise in this area;*
- *they should be commissioned or led by government, but in active partnership and consultation with other stakeholders; however, if other organizations initiate the treatment guidelines development process, they should do so in active collaboration with government;*
- *they should include a dissemination and implementation plan, should highlight the importance of all service providers (within or outside the health-care sector) setting an example by not using tobacco, and should be periodically reviewed and updated, in the light of developing scientific evidence, and in accordance with the obligations established by Article 5.1 of the WHO FCTC.*

Additional key characteristics of national treatment guidelines:
- *they should be widely endorsed at national level, including by health professional organizations and/or associations;*
- *they should include as broad a range of interventions as possible, such as systematic identification of people who use tobacco, provision of brief advice, quit lines, face-to face behavioural support provided by workers trained to deliver it, systems to make medications accessible and free or at an affordable cost, and systems to support the key steps involved in helping people to quit tobacco use, including reporting tobacco use status in all medical notes;*
- *they should cover all settings and all providers, both within and outside the health-care sector.*

The EQUIPP report and the e.SCCAN 2010 report[7] provide the baseline for the current smoking cessation service level in different European countries. In addition, the ENSP Secretariat in Brussels collected other relevant data using a survey among ENSP's members.

General objectives and connected actions

This project aims to support smoking cessation activities and strengthen their impact by:
- providing the health professionals with a European template of smoking cessation guidelines and best practice;
- providing the tobacco control community with tools for monitoring and accreditation.

References

1 *Consolidated Version of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, http://eur-lex.europa.eu/LexUriServ/LexUriServ.do?uri=OJ:C:2008:115:0047:0199:en:PDF*

2 *White Paper Together for Health: A Strategic Approach for the EU 2008-2013, COM(2007) 630 final, http://ec.europa.eu/health/ph_overview/Documents/strategy_wp_en.pdf*

3 *Eurobarometer 385, Attitudes of Europeans Towards Tobacco, European Commission, May 2012 http://ec.europa.eu/health/tobacco/docs/eurobaro_attitudes_towards_tobacco_2012_en.pdf*

4 *http://www.europarl.europa.eu/sides/getDoc.do?pubRef=-//EP//TEXT+TA+20091126+ITEMS+DOC+XML+V0//FR&language=FR*

5 *WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Control: guidelines for implementation, 2011 http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2011/9789241501316_eng.pdf*

6 *Bridgehead International, EQUIPP: Europe Quitting: Progress and Pathways, London, 2011 http://www.ensp.org/sites/default/files/uploads/EQUIPP_report.pdf*

7 *European Smoking Cessation Clinic Assessment and Networking project (e.SCCAN) http://ofta-asso.fr/esccan/*

PART ONE

Recognizing tobacco use and tobacco dependence in general practice

1.0

Assessment/diagnostic of tobacco use and tobacco dependence

1.1 Tobacco use is a disease

Smoking and smokeless tobacco products use are a major cause of illness, incapacity and death worldwide (according to the FCTC). It is a known fact that a smokers' life expectancy is ten years shorter than that of a non-smoker: half of smokers lose 20 years of healthy life before dying from a tobacco-related disease[1]. Tobacco kills some 500,000 people per annum in the EU[2].

The condition under discussion needs to be framed correctly: smoking and tobacco use. Smoking was marketed by the tobacco industry as a *freedom* and *life-style* choice, but smoking is a *disease* and an *addiction*. Tobacco dependence is the disease which drives the vast majority of tobacco use among adults. Tobacco dependence is associated with the long-term, daily use of tobacco-based products (cigarettes, pipes, cigars, bidis, hookahs, chewing tobacco etc.). Most smokers are unable to stop smoking at will. In medical terms chronic smoking is defined as: tobacco dependence, nicotine dependence, tobacco addiction or nicotine addiction[3].

Doctors and health professionals must therefore take into account that tobacco dependence is a medical condition and not a habit, vice, pleasure, freedom or life-style, as described by tobacco industry manipulations.

The main etiological factor of tobacco dependence disease is nicotine. Nicotine is a highly addictive drug which is contained in tobacco and which determines dependence in those who use tobacco products chronically. Any tobacco use gesture is detrimental to health. Even though, depending on the intensity, duration of use and type of tobacco product used, not all tobacco users follow the same risk pattern, the response of health professionals to tobacco use must be one: to treat smokers' tobacco dependence without delay.

As tobacco dependence is a disease, it must be diagnosed and treated in the same way as other chronic diseases. A health professional has the duty to intervene and initiate tobacco cessation. Prompt initiation of treatment for tobacco dependence is a good practice for doctors and health professionals,

as tobacco consumption is mainly driven by tobacco dependence: only in very exceptional cases is tobacco smoking driven by a smoker's free choice of life-style. It is bad practice not to treat or arrange for treatment of tobacco-dependent patients. A minimum intervention is minimal counselling which is a neutral practice (preventing bad practice) (Figure 2).

Figure 2:The 5 As algorithm to assist smokers with quitting

Once tobacco use and dependence are correctly perceived as a disease, tobacco-dependent smokers require medical assistance offered by a health professional in order to quit, which is provided through tobacco dependence treatment. This medical aid consists of diagnosing chronic tobacco use and tobacco dependence, followed by regular treatment for remission of tobacco consumption and treatment of chronic tobacco dependence, as with any other disease.

By way of conclusion, by smoking tobacco, individuals not only introduce nicotine into their own bodies and maintain or increase tobacco dependence, but also expose themselves to numerous severe illnesses, many of which are fatal, caused by the toxins contained in tobacco. The earlier tobacco dependence is treated, the earlier the patient quits smoking or using oral tobacco and tobacco smoke and the higher the health benefit for the patient. Tobacco dependence has to be treated without delay in all smokers until remission of tobacco use.

1.2. Definitions, classifications, terms and specific explanations

1.2.1 Tobacco dependence: an acquired industrial disease

Tobacco dependence is an addiction to tobacco caused by the drug nicotine. The smoker suffering from tobacco dependence cannot stop using the substance despite the fact that it causes him/her harm. While the nicotine contained in tobacco causes the nicotine dependence, the toxic effects are mainly due to other substances contained in the tobacco smoke.

The reason why persons who use tobacco on a daily basis for at least several weeks cannot quit smoking easily is the dependence mainly due to the nicotine contained in tobacco. Inhaled nicotine is known as a drug able to induce an addiction at least as strong as that of heroin or cocaine.

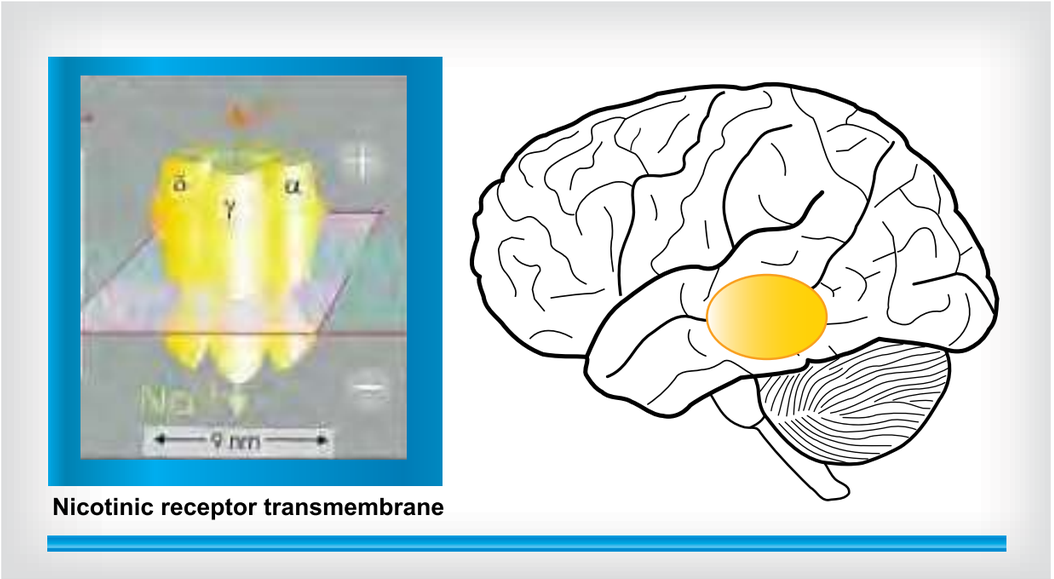
Tobacco users who took up smoking as teenagers are usually more addicted than those who took up tobacco use as adults. Nicotine, a substance with psycho-active properties, creates the cravings for cigarettes, cigars, pipes, making smokers unable to quit easily and causes smokers to have physical and psychological symptoms when abstaining from smoking.

1.2.2 Mechanism of induction of tobacco dependence

Inhaled nicotine reaches the arterial blood circulation of the brain via the lungs in seven seconds. The nicotine shot is fixed on specific acetylcholine receptors (mainly α4 β2 nicotine receptors in the central nervous system, in the dopamine reward area (Figure 3).

Each cigarette immediately decreases the craving but desensitizes nicotine receptors and increases their number, thus increasing the urge for the next cigarette. This stimulation caused by tobacco use triggers chronic consumption[4].

After inhalation of nicotine, an increase of the noradrenaline concentration occurs in *nucleus accumbens* and *locus coeruleus* (Figure 3), determining sensations of psycho-cognitive stimulation, which the individual perceives as pleasant, especially when his/her experience is before a craving (the first experience of cigarettes is usually unpleasant).



Nicotinic receptor transmembrane

Figure 3: Nicotine receptor in cell membrane of nucleus accumbens: brain accumbens nucleus and focus on nicotinic receptor on the membrane

During the phase of tobacco dependence initiation, the smoker will have to raise the amount of nicotine administered in order to recreate the same intense sensations.

After the initial adaptation period, the smoker needs his/her individual dose of nicotine in order to feel a neutral state and to prevent withdrawal symptoms. This morphologic adaptation occurring in the central nervous system corresponds to the development of a physical dependence[5].

1.2.3 Nicotine is not the only driver of tobacco dependence

Moreover, besides the physical dependence, the repeated use of tobacco products can become a habit. The social contacts and the situations associated with a certain daily routine can reinforce tobacco use. After a while, this behaviour becomes anchored in daily life. When, for various reasons, it is not possible to satisfy the smoking urge, symptoms of nicotine withdrawal occur, such as nervousness, agitation or even aggressiveness.

If a current smoker stops using tobacco, withdrawal symptoms may occur. Such reactions are the consequences of a physical dependence, but also of a psychological one. Nicotine dependence has two components: physical dependence[6] and psychological dependence.
Nicotine withdrawal syndrome needs support both by pharmacological treatment to alleviate the physical symptoms and by behavioural therapy aiming to change the patient's attitude towards substance abuse.

1.2.4 Nicotine dependence according to WHO

A person is considered as nicotine-dependent when he/she has a history of chronic consumption with the following characteristics: substance abuse, continues to self-administer the substance despite perceived negative effects, high tolerance towards the substance and manifests withdrawal symptoms when trying to stop use[7].

Nicotine dependence has a multi-factoral determination, in which the main feature is the desire to experience nicotine's pharmacological effects and avoid the possible withdrawal phenomena and conditioned associations, either positive (nicotine produces psychoactive stimulation) or negative (absence of nicotine results in discomfort)[8].

According to the criteria adopted by WHO in the *International Classification of Diseases*, tobacco dependence is included in: *Mental and behavioural disorders due to tobacco use* and has the disease code F17 (Table 2).

Table 2: Classification of tobacco dependence in the ICD10CM classification of diseases, WHO (to be applied in USA in October 2013, not yet endorsed in EU)

website for reference
http://www.icd10data.com

Nicotine dependence F17
Excludes (others specific codes)
- history of tobacco dependence (Z87.891)
- tobacco use NOS (Z72.0)
- tobacco use (smoking) during pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium (O99.33-)
- toxic effect of nicotine (T65.2-)

F17Nicotine dependence
F17.2 Nicotine dependence
F17.20 Nicotine dependence, unspecified
F17.200…… uncomplicated
F17.201…… in remission
F17.203…… nicotine dependence unspecified, with withdrawal
F17.208…… with other nicotine-induced disorders
F17.209…… with unspecified nicotine-induced disorders
F17.21 Nicotine dependence, cigarettes
F17.210…… uncomplicated
F17.211…… in remission
F17.213…… with withdrawal
F17.218…… with other nicotine-induced disorders
F17.219…… with unspecified nicotine-induced disorders
F17.22 Nicotine dependence, chewing tobacco
F17.220…… uncomplicated
F17.221…… in remission
F17.223…… with withdrawal
F17.228…… with other nicotine-induced disorders
F17.229…… with unspecified nicotine-induced disorders
F17.29 Nicotine dependence, other tobacco product
F17.290…… uncomplicated
F17.291…… in remission
F17.293…… with withdrawal
F17.298…… with other nicotine-induced disorders
F17.299…… with unspecified nicotine-induced disorders

The dependence syndromes refer to a cluster of physical, psychological, behavioural and cognitive phenomena in which the use of a substance (in this case tobacco) becomes a priority for person concerned, disfavouring other behaviours which in the past used to have a higher value for that person (see 1.5.1).

Nicotine/tobacco abstinence (smoking cessation)

Tobacco abstinence is considered to be a minimum period of six weeks without any tobacco use (from the date of cessation). In other words, if the smoker has set a smoking cessation date when he/she succeeded to stop smoking completely, the period is calculated as of that date. After quitting smoking, relapse is defined as smoking ≥ 7 cigarettes for seven consecutive days or for two consecutive weeks. Smoking less is defined as a lapse. A routine six-month assessment of abstinence is recommended to assess cessation and early relapse.

Nicotine withdrawal syndrome

While administering nicotine in the body, chiefly by inhalation, leads to nicotine dependence, conversely, when nicotine is no longer delivered to a nicotine-dependent person, nicotine withdrawal syndrome occurs.

Nicotine withdrawal symptoms are caused by suddenly stopping nicotine supply. Nicotine withdrawal can manifest itself in the first four to twelve hours after stopping smoking.
Symptoms include:

- acute/uncontrollable need to smoke (craving);
- irritability;
- restlessness, anger, anxiety feelings;
- tiredness;
- increased appetite, especially for sweets and resultant weight gain;
- trouble to concentrate and focus memory;
- depression;
- headaches;
- insomnia;
- dizziness.

These symptoms vary depending on the individual: some smokers feel withdrawal more intensely than others. All these manifestations are temporary, reaching maximum intensity in the first 24 to 72 hours and decreasing in the ensuing three to four weeks.

Nicotine withdrawal symptoms represent the sum of all changes induced by abrupt cessation of nicotine consumption, which is particularly difficult in the first two to six weeks and which must be accompanied by qualified medical assistance and psychological support. Thus the best strategy recommended by all smoking cessation guidelines for treating nicotine dependence is to combine pharmacological treatment with psycho-behavioural therapy[10].

Smoking status

Smoking status is a way to classify individuals depending on their attitude towards smoking. Some standard questions considered helpful in assessing smoking status are as follows:

1. Have you ever smoked?
2. How many cigarettes have you smoked in your life? Is it more or less than 100? (80 cigarettes = 100 g of tobacco as 1 cigarette contains 0.8 g of tobacco)
3. Do you smoke every day/on certain days/in specific situations? Which situations?
4. How many years have you been smoking?
5. How many cigarettes (or other tobacco products, e.g. pipes, cigars etc.) do you usually smoke per day?
6. For how many years/months have you quit smoking?

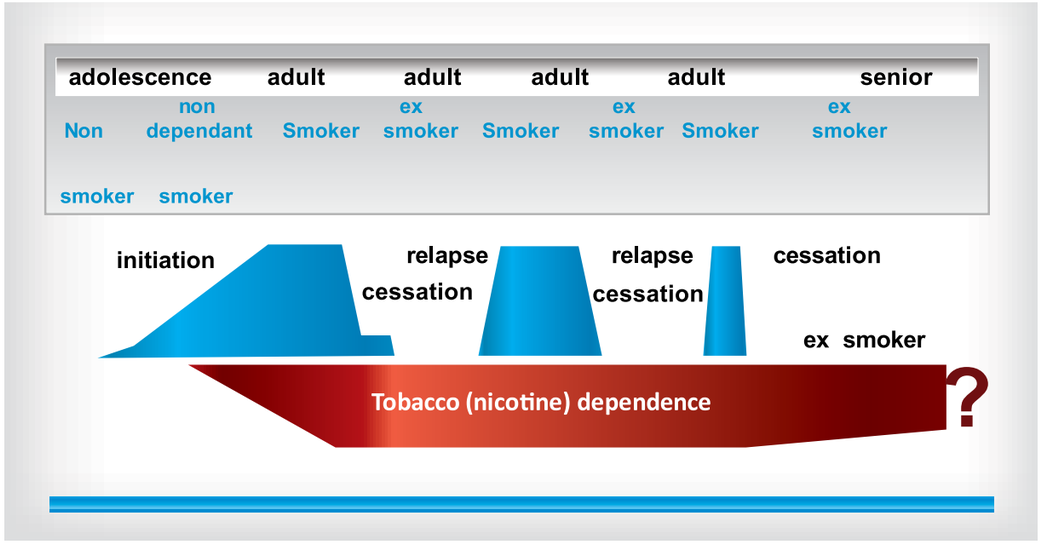
An operational method of defining the smoking status of patients:
- ***Daily smoker*** is a person who has smoked on a daily basis for at least three months.
- ***Occasional smoker*** is a person who has smoked, but not on a daily basis.
- ***Non-smoker*** is a person who has not smoked more than 100 cigarettes in his/her life-time (or 100 g of tobacco, in the case of pipes, cigars or other tobacco products).
- ***Ex-smoker*** is a person who has quit smoking for at least six months.

1.3. Smoking is a chronic relapsing disease

1.3.1 Natural history of tobacco dependence

As demonstrated above, smoking defined as chronic tobacco consumption (equivalent terms: tobacco dependence or nicotine dependence) is a disease and not a habit. Moreover, nicotine/tobacco dependence is a chronic pathological condition, with a relapsing nature, which is mostly acquired during adolescence.
Tobacco dependence has many characteristics of a chronic disease: most smokers persist in consuming tobacco for years or decades and relapse despite the fact that they may have succeeded in quitting for brief or lengthier periods (Figure 4).

Figure 4: Natural history of tobacco consumption and tobacco dependence. Initiation of tobacco use starts in adolescence; after a few months or years tobacco dependence occurs and probably remains for life; smoking cessation may occur but the smoker does not become a non-smoker but remains an ex-smoker



1.3.2 Treatment of tobacco dependence after cessation

Tobacco dependence may need persistent and repeated therapeutic interventions, as well as long-term follow-up until it is cured[11].

Understanding its chronic nature implies long-term observation, and not simply interventions that are delivered during acute stages.

Several pharmacological treatment cures might therefore be required after relapse, sometimes by alternating one medication with another, as well as educating patients and offering them psycho-behavioural support to avoid the risk of relapse, which may discourage or block new quit attempts. No effective treatment has yet been indentified to treat tobacco dependence in the abstinent smoker. Simply being an ex-smoker is no sure guarantee of the end of tobacco dependence (Figure 4).

Although many clinicians are able to treat patients with chronic diseases such as diabetes, arterial hypertension, COPD, etc., they feel less comfortable when it comes to treating tobacco dependence, because they ignore the fact that tobacco dependence is a chronic disease. Approaching smoking as a chronic disease accelerates the curative process, increases the success rate of cessation pharmacotherapy and reduces relapses.

We recommend to all practitioners who assist patients identified as smokers to approach tobacco use and tobacco dependence as a chronic relapsing disorder and to define it in medical terms as tobacco dependence.

1.4. Routine identification of smokers is mandatory in current medical practice

In order to achieve the best smoking cessation rates, all smokers must be systematically identified at any medical contact, whether or not the patient is in consultation for a tobacco-related disease. The best opportunities for this purpose are occasional or annual medical visits, as most citizens visit their own family doctor or general practitioner at least once a year, or regularly/occasionally visit a dentist or another doctor or health professional for various health or other reasons. All doctors, no matter what their specialty, should use these occasions to identify smokers and to organize cessation therapy.

Clinical evaluation of tobacco use is a mandatory medical act and must be legitimized as a routine intervention.

Smoking status and other tobacco consumption as recommended by these smoking cessation guidelines must be recorded in the patient's medical records: e.g. hospital admission or discharge papers, referrals, laboratory reports etc. This recommendation is based on a meta-analysis of nine randomized studies about the impact of tobacco usage screening on cessation rates. Also, in a survey published in 2009, McCullough and colleagues showed that the number of patients registered for receiving cessation counselling was higher when doctors systematically asked about tobacco use and drew up a cessation plant.

1.5 Assessment/diagnosis of tobacco use and dependence

Assessing smokers is a process consisting of a clinical and biological assessment of tobacco smoke exposure, assessment of tobacco dependence, assessment of psycho-behavioural profile and health consequences of tobacco use.

1.5.1. Clinical diagnosis of tobacco use and dependence

Clinical diagnosis is based on:

Smoking status

Smoking status (non-smoker, ex-smoker, occasional smoker, daily smoker, oral tobacco user), as presented in chapter 4.

Type of tobacco product used

The type of tobacco product used gives an idea about the level of addiction, since nicotine dependence is more severe in cigarette consumers, compared to those who use cigars, pipes, water pipes, e-cigarettes or oral tobacco.

Tobacco consumption

Tobacco consumption may be defined as:

- number of cigarettes smoked per day;
- number of cigarette packs/years (no. of PY). This is the result of multiplying the number of cigarettes packs smoked/day by the number of years of smoking (e.g. if someone smokes 15 cigarettes per day for 15 years, this 15 equals 15x15/20 = 11.2 PY).

Tobacco dependence assessment

Tobacco dependence could be diagnosed in accordance with the WHO definition. Tobacco dependence is defined by the presence of at least 3 out of 7 definition criteria, if present at a moment during the past 12 months

- strong desire to smoke,
- difficulty in controlling quantity,
- withdrawal symptoms when reducing or quitting tobacco,
- continued consumption despite obvious harmful effects,
- priority of smoking over other activities,
- high tolerance,
- physical tobacco withdrawal symptoms.

In daily routine, nicotine/cigarette dependence is mainly assessed using the Fagerström nicotine dependence test (Table 3) that provides not only a yes/no answer but also a final score, which is very valuable in clinical practice

Table 3 :Fagerström Test for nicotine dependence (FTND)[12]

1. How soon after you wake up do you smoke the first cigarette?
Under 5 minutes (3)
6-30 minutes (2)
31-60 minutes (1)
More than 60 minutes (0)
2. Does it feel difficult for you to abstain from smoking in places where smoking is banned (e.g. church, cinema, train, restaurant etc.)?
Yes (1)
No (0)
3. Which cigarette would it be the most difficult for you to give up?
The first cigarette in the morning (1)
All the others (0)
4. How many cigarettes/day do you smoke?
10 or fewer (0)
11-20 (1)
21-30 (2)
31 or more (3)
5. Do you smoke more frequently in the first hours after you wake up than in the rest of the day?
Yes (1)
No (0)
6. Do you also smoke if you are so ill that you are immobilized in bed most of the day?
Yes (1)
No (0)
The patient may fill in the questionnaire directly. The range of scores is from 0 to 10. This enables precise evaluation of nicotine dependence, based on which a therapy will be elaborated: score 0-3: no or low tobacco dependence score 4-6: medium tobacco dependence score 7-10: high tobacco dependence

The higher the score, the higher the nicotine dependence of an individual. A score of 4 or over indicates the need to administer pharmacological treatment and predicts a more severe withdrawal syndrome.

The key questions are questions 1 and 4: the number of cigarettes smoked daily and the time of the first cigarette after waking up in the morning. These two questions may be asked by a doctor during consultation and constitute the short version test, scored from 0 to 6, with the same score values as the FTND.

For in-depth evaluation of the nicotine dependence syndrome it is relevant to record as precisely as possible all facets and the more discrete mechanisms of pro-addiction motivation, such as: tolerance, positive and negative conditioning, opposing process, reward effect, social skills. But this assessment is not done in routine use, except in specialized centres.

Such an evaluation is possible using several instruments, i.e. the Nicotine Dependence Syndrome Scale (NDSS)[13] and the Wisconsin Inventory of the Reasons for Tobacco dependence (WIRTD).

The Tobacco Dependence Table (TDT) is another self-measurement scale designed to characterize the APA–DSM IV2 criteria for tobacco dependence. According to this table, 0 signifies no tobacco dependence symptoms and 1 certifies tobacco dependence criteria.

1.5.2 Analysis of previous quit smoking attempts

Analysis of previous quit smoking attempts implies a series of questions about the number of quit attempts, longest smoking abstinence period, any previous cessation treatment and what the treatment consisted of, any history of withdrawal symptoms, any relapsing risk factors, positive aspects described during abstinence. These features are important to anticipate treatment success or failure risk factors, as well as treatment compliance and patient's capacity to overcome withdrawal.

1.5.3 Motivation to quit smoking

Motivation of a smoker to quit is always welcomed and all health professionals may assess motivation of patients through direct questions (cf. Table 4):

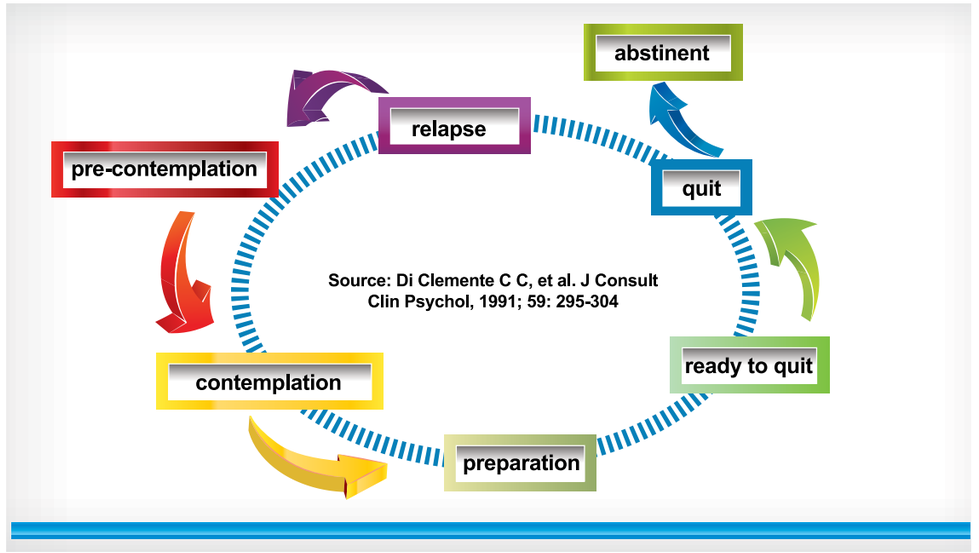
Table 4: Example of direct questions for assessment of quit motivation

- Do you want to quit smoking (now)?
- If you decide to quit smoking, do you think you would succeed? What chances to succeed do you give to yourself?
- What are your reasons for wanting to give up smoking?
- How important is it for you to quit smoking?

For research purposes a validated scale like the RFQ scale can be used.

According to the classic model of J.O. Prochaska and C.C. DiClemente for quantifying the motivation , the psychological process of smoking cessation goes through several stages (Figure 5):

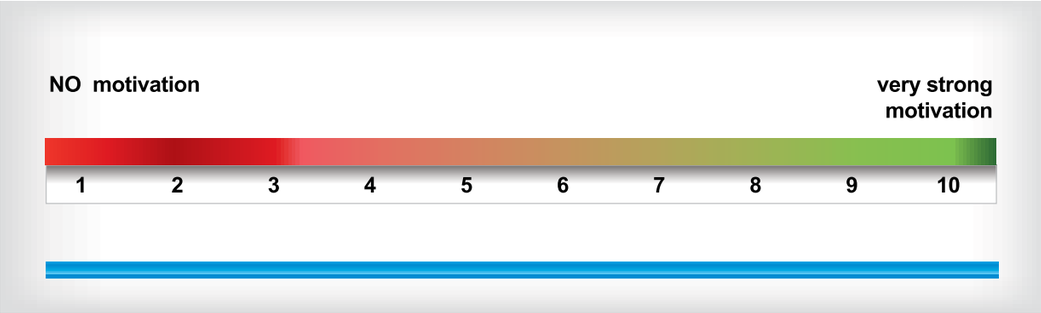
Figure 5: Stage to preparation to change according to the 1991 Prochaska model



- *Pre-contemplation*: the patient is fully satisfied by his/her smoking behaviour and he/she does not feel any need for a change; 2 APA–DSM IV: Psychiatric Association - Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders
- *Contemplation*: the patient feels the need for a change, but this is not strong enough to push himself/herself to action or to make an action plan
- *Preparation*: the patient has decided to try to change his/her smoking behaviour and is ready for this change in the near future
- *Action*: the patient starts the smoking cessation attempt.

But smoking cessation in dependent smokers must be initiated by a physician in all cases. There are no precise instruments to measure motivation, but a scale on which patients can assess by themselves exactly where they are, on a scale from 1 to 10, based on their own responses to questions about their cessation motivation, can prove very useful (cf. Figure 6). There are some published instruments to measure the motivation i.e the 11-item RMQSQ (Readiness and Motivation to Quit Smoking Questionnaire).

Figure 6: Easy to use scale of motivation



In the case of smokers with comorbidities and patients with tobacco dependence the health professional has to communicate to the patient the decision to treat tobacco dependence for achieving smoking remission. As for all medical decisions, the patient remains free to refuse treatment, but the health professional has to propose smoking cessation treatment and thus have the same conviction as when proposing a treatment for diabetes or for hypertension.

It is only in the case of smokers or tobacco users without tobacco dependence that the doctor may leave the therapeutic choice to the patient and provide only counselling, slowly adapt the patient's

initial decision and move him/her towards a decision to quit smoking.
On a case-by-case basis and depending on available resources, the smoker's clinical evaluation must be completed by a psychological and a motivational interview. These working tools will provide additional elements about the patient's psycho-behavioural profile, thus increasing the success rate, the motivational interview itself being part of the treatment.

1.5.4 Non-psychiatric patient's medical history

The patient's medical history is relevant in the choice of therapeutic option, with regard to any drug interaction or any incompatibility required by a concurrent disorder/comorbidity.

Cardiovascular, traumatic, dermatological, infectious etc. disorders may also impose caution in prescribing cessation pharmacological treatment; thus the need to note them in the smoker's medical records.

1.5.5 Patient's anxiety and depression history

Generally, depression and anxiety are the most frequent conditions described in heavy smokers. Very often such syndromes impose caution or raise awareness about the side effects of cessation medication. To better treat depressive smokers, the doctor may quantify depression and dysphoria with the aid of two simple questions:

- *Have you felt sad, depressed, desperate in the past month?*
- *Have you had the feeling that you do things with neither pleasure nor interest in the past month?*

A positive answer to both questions may be interpreted as a strong sign of depression. Another faster way to quantify depression can be just one question:

- *Have you felt sad on most of the days over the past two weeks?*

If the answer is yes, again we can consider that the smoker is depressed. This situation is best applicable to smoking patients with a history of stroke. More elaborate tests to evaluate the level of depression are also known, i.e.

- The Anxiety and Depression Scale,
- Hamilton Depression Subscale[14],
- Primary Care Evaluation of Mental Disorders and Beck Depression Inventory.

1.5.6 Contraception

It is also very important to check the physiological status in women (pregnancy, breast-feeding, contraception methods etc.) to organize smoking cessation effectively.

1.5.7. Laboratory diagnosis of tobacco dependence

Smoking status as defined based on clinical criteria is also evaluated by biochemical laboratory tests to assess biomarkers of tobacco smoke exposure, such as carbon monoxide concentration in exhaled air and level of cotinine (as a result of the nicotine metabolism process).

Carbon monoxide (CO)

CO is the easiest biomarker to monitor; in the absence of CO in the environment, it measures tobacco consumption. CO concentration in a smoker's body can be determined by asking the smoker to exhale into a carbon monoxide analyzer. CO is measured in ppm (parts per million), a measurement unit that can be converted as carboxyhemoglobin equivalent, with the equipment currently in use (Figure 7).

Figure 7: Carbon monoxide expired monitoring devices (CO)

Normally, CO concentration in exhaled air of a non-smoker should not exceed 4 ppm. On the contrary, CO in exhaled air of a smoker may achieve 10-20 ppm (i.e. 2-5% carboxyhemoglobin).

Most non-smokers have < 5 ppm of CO_{exp}, most smokers have more than 10 ppm with a dose relation increase (Figure 8). The best cut-off value to separate smoker and non-smoker is 7 ppm. This measurement is very useful in objectively assessing smoking abstinence during follow-up, e.g. if a patient under cessation pharmacotherapy declares that he/she has not smoked any more in the previous days, but his CO concentration is higher than 3 ppm, this can signify a recent exposure to tobacco smoke or the fact that the patient is not honest about his/her smoking status.

A recent study (dated 2011) suggest to choose an even lower cut off (5 ppm) when dealing with areas with strong smoke-free laws[15].

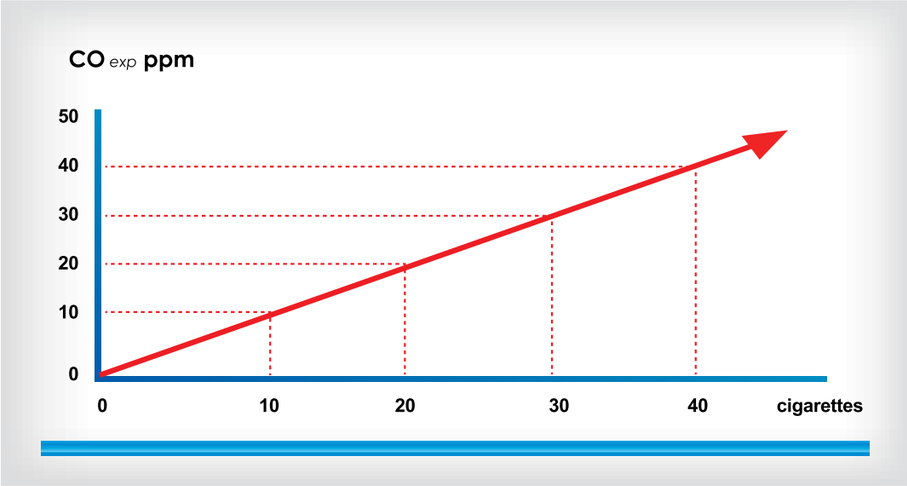
To obtain a very accurate interpretation of this test's value, it is worth noting that CO half-life is about 4-6 hours; at the same time the level of CO is also influenced by physical effort. Moreover, in 24 hours since the last cigarette smoked, the CO reaches normal values in the exhaled air. This explains why CO concentration in the morning (after several hours of sleep without smoking) is usually lower. This is the reason why it is recommended to measure CO in the afternoon, when it will represent a more true tobacco exposure biomarker.

In clinical practice, high CO values should be explained to the patient as a proof of the impact of smoking on the cardiovascular function, while normalized CO values would demonstrate that the smoker's organism purifies itself from this toxin.

The fast conversion of CO to normal values encourages the smoker to be abstinent and thus demonstrates lower CO values at each follow-up visit, which supports the quitting attempt.
On the other hand, there are situations when CO concentration can be higher than expected, as in the case of smokers with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). In these subjects, a higher CO ratio is either explained by the production of carbon monoxide as a result of the chronic airway inflammatory processes in COPD, or it is simply the more intense smoking described in this category of patients.

It seems that they mostly tend to smoke more and also have a particular way of inhaling which results in higher exhaled air CO levels[16].

Figure 8: Relation between number of cigarettes and CO exhaled (results from the EU HELP campaign; N.B. significant individual variations exist)



CO measurement is of great importance in the therapeutic field because the patient can appreciate how quitting reduces CO intoxication, improves oxygenation of the body (HbCO) and increases compliance to treatment, while the health care provider can modulate his/her therapeutic intervention verifying the patient's adherence to the treatment programme. It is thus essential for each smoking cessation centre to be equipped with a CO analyzer[17].

Cotinine

Cotinine is the major metabolism product of nicotine. By monitoring its concentration in the body, one can assess an individual's tobacco smoke exposure. The half-life of nicotine is about two hours; however nicotine concentration can vary depending on the moment of the day when the last cigarette was smoked. In turn, cotinine has a half-life of 15-20 hours. It can be measured in blood, hair, saliva and urine. A plasmatic cotinine concentration < 15 ng/ml is considered as a proof of non-smoking status. In smokers, plasma cotinine is about 200 ng/ml, but may reach up to 1000 ng/ml depending on the intensity of smoking. Adapting treatment to cotinine level is no more efficient than using clinical symptom monitoring to adapt the therapeutic dose[18]. Cotinine assessment is thus not usually used as a monitoring tool to survey smoking cessation in common clinical practice.

Utility of biomarkers

Monitoring of such biomarkers in the case of smoking reduction is worth mentioning, with regard to its relevance. Based on an analysis of 13 trials aiming to reduce number of cigarettes smoked per day, by using nicotine replacement therapy in most cases, it was concluded that carbon monoxide and cotinine in the body do not decrease in proportion to the number of cigarettes reduced per day.

This observation led to a twofold conclusion:

1. smoking reduction cannot be coherently monitored on the basis of CO and cotinine;
2. when nicotine substitutes are used to help smokers quit, cotinine interpretation is ambiguous due to supplementary nicotine contribution via substitution therapy.

References

1 *Doll R, Peto R, Boreham J, Sutherland I. Mortality in relation to smoking: 50 years' observations on male British doctors BMJ 2004, doi:10.1136/bmj.38142.554479.A*

2 *http://www.otc.ie/uploads/Publications Towards a Tobacco free society low res version.pdf*

3 *Noțiuni generale de tabacologie – supliment al ghidului GREFA, Tehnopress Iași, 2008, www.srp.ro*

4 *Cornuz J., Humair J.P., Zellweger J.P., Desaccoutumance au tabac, Schwiz Med Forum, 2004; 4:334339*

5 *Cornuz J., Humair J.P., Zellweger J.P., Desaccoutumance au tabac, Schwiz Med Forum, 2004; 4:334339*

6 *Cannon D.S., Baker T.B.,Piper M.E., Scholand M.B.,Lawrence D.L.,Drayna D.T., Mcmahon W.M.,Villegas G.M.,Caton T.C.,Coon H., Leppert M.F.,Association between phenylthiocarbamide gene polymorphisms and cigarette smoking, Nicotine Tob.Res.,2005 Dec., 7(6),8538*

7 *Trofor A., RaduLoghin C., Fumatul de la obicei la boala 101 întrebări despre fumat –ediția a 2a revăzută și adăugită, Editura Tehnopress 2005*

8 *Benowitz N.L., Brunetta P.G.Smoking Hazard and Cessation in Murray & Nadel'sTextbook of Respiratory MedicineMason Broaddus Murray, Nadel, 2005*

9 *http://www.icd10data.com/*

10 *Kawakami N, Takatsuka N, Inaba S, Shimizu H. Development of a screening questionnaire for tobacco/ nicotine dependence according to ICD10, DSMIIIR, and DSMIV. Addictive Behaviors. 1999;24:155–166*

11 *Kawakami N, Takatsuka N, Inaba S, Shimizu H. Development of a screening questionnaire for tobacco/ nicotine dependence according to ICD10, DSMIIIR, and DSMIV. Addictive Behaviors. 1999;24:155–166*

12 *Fagerstrom KO, Schneider N. Measuring nicotine dependence: a review of the Fagerstrom Tolerance Questionnaire. J Behav Med 1989; 12: 159–182*

13 *Shiffman S.,Waters A., Hickcox A.,The nicotine dependence syndrome scale: a multidimensional measure of nicotine dependence, Nicotine Tob.Res.,2004,Apr.,6(2), 32748*

14 *Moroni L, Bettinardi O, Vidotto G, et al. Scheda ansia e depressione forma ridotta: norme per l'utilizzo in*

ambito riabilitativo. [Anxiety and Depression Short Scale: norms for its use in rehabilitation.]. Monaldi Arch Chest Dis 2006; 66: 255–263

15 *Marrone GF, Shakleya DM, Scheidweiler KB, Singleton EG, Huestis MA, Heishman SJ. Relative performance of common biochemical indicators in detecting cigarette smoking. Addiction. 2011 Jul;106(7):1325-34. doi: 10.1111/j.1360-0443.2011.03441.x. Epub 2011 May 27*

16 *Javors MA, Hatch JP, Lamb R. Cut-off levels for breath carbon monoxide as a marker for cigarette smoking. Addiction 2005; 100: 159–167*

17 *Zagà V, Mura M, Invernizzi G. Monossido di Carbonio e fumo di tabacco/ Carbon Monoxide and tobacco smoke. Tabaccologia 2007; 4: 27-33*

18 *Berlin I, Jacob N, Coudert M, Perriot J, Schultz L, Rodon N. Adjustment of nicotine replacement therapies according to saliva cotinine concentration: the ADONIS* trial - a randomized study in smokers with medical comorbidities. Addiction. 2011 Apr;106(4):833-43 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21205047*

2.0

General recommendations for the treatment of tobacco use and tobacco dependence

This chapter briefly presents recommendations for the treatment of tobacco use and tobacco dependence.

2.1 Tobacco use

Tobacco consumption is mainly due to tobacco dependence, a chronic disorder primarily acquired during adolescence, but all health professionals must consider all tobacco use (smoked or chewed) as a health hazard, even if there is no tobacco dependence. Few adult people smoke only as a behaviour without tobacco dependence. Usually, non-dependent smokers start smoking late in life. Health professionals must inform these patients about the health risks involved and must advise them not to use tobacco, although medical treatment is not needed for this small number of tobacco users. Health professionals have only to inform and provide counselling to prevent this hazardous action. Health professionals must be more proactive in the case of adolescents who smoke without tobacco dependence, because consumption during adolescence becomes tobacco dependence towards the end of adolescence.

2.2 Tobacco dependence disease

In nearly all adult smokers, smoking is driven by a disease acquired during adolescence, tobacco dependence, which is a chronic disease with no complete cure, although tobacco use may be halted for a short period or for life with high health benefits.

Tobacco-dependent smokers light up most cigarettes once the level of nicotine has declined in the brain, 30 to 60 minutes after the last cigarette. Tobacco consumption is not driven by the brain cortex, but rather by a non-conscious part of the brain not controlled by will (*accumbens nucleus*).

As with all diseases, the decision to treat the disease is the health professional's decision after diagnosis and assessment. The patient may refuse treatment, but health professionals must act to cure the patient of a disease that kills half of patients suffering from it. Just as health professionals carry out treatment of diabetes mellitus, hypertension or any other chronic disease, so health professionals

must treat tobacco dependence once a diagnosis has been made.
Smoking cessation treatment has been studied in depth and tools exist to help smokers and other tobacco users quit tobacco. Treatment of chronic tobacco dependence after cessation in ex-smokers has been widely assessed. No validated tools exist to identify ex-smokers with a high risk of relapse and no validated treatments are proposed except continuation of cessation treatment and cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT) to prevent relapse in high-risk relapsing situations. New studies are needed to assess new strategies to treat tobacco addiction in non-smokers and to prevent relapse.

2.3 Smoking cessation

The key components of successful cessation (remission) are combinations of therapeutic education, behavioural support and medication but the preparation and motivation to quit, age, comorbidity and numerous personal factors affect the chances of success.

2.3.1 Therapeutic education

- Explain tobacco dependence disease
- Explain the reasons for lighting up a cigarette
- Explain the health consequences of smoking
- Explain the benefits of quitting smoking
- Explain tobacco cessation treatment
- Explain chronic tobacco dependence management to prevent relapse
- Present tools available locally to smokers.

2.3.2 Behavioural support(CBT)

- Identify the behavioural causes of smoking, long-term and immediate stimulation.
- Increase motivation to quit and decrease fears of quitting and becoming a non-smoker.
- Learn how to deal with emotions.

2.3.3 Medication available

- Nicotine replacement therapies are available in transdermal form (patches), oral form (gum, lozenge, sublingual tablets, inhaler) and in some countries nasal spray. Compared to the past, dosage is more adaptable, fixed combinations are rarely used and combinations of patch and oral NRT formulations are largely used to increase the dose of nicotine close to the level of nicotine received by cigarettes.
- Varenicline is a specific agonist of alpha4 beta2 nicotine receptor used as smoking cessation monotherapy with an efficacy versus placebo close to the efficacy of combined high doses of nicotine replacement therapies.
- Bupropion is a medication used initially for psychiatric disorders that has shown an efficacy in smoking cessation. This drug can be combined with NRT.
- Nortriptyline and citizine are cheap medications available in some countries.

2.3.4 Tobacco cessation

The initial aim of the treatment is to quit tobacco.
- A quitter is a smoker who has voluntarily not smoked a single cigarette for at least 24 hours.
- Abstinence has to be monitored when possible together with monitoring of expiratory carbon monoxide.
- The maximum recommended level of carbon monoxide (CO) in breath required to validate abstinence is 7 ppm.

2.4 Treatment of tobacco dependence after cessation

Tobacco dependence is a chronic disorder with a high risk of relapse after tobacco cessation. Half of new ex-smokers relapse in the following year. The relapse rate is higher in the first weeks of cessation so in clinical practice long-term follow-up is recommended for at least six months and preferably 12 months in order to confirm abstinence and to cover the period of highest relapse risk.

Even after several years of abstinence, the risk of relapse remains high. Further studies are needed to identify those at high risk of relapse.

Craving is a major factor of relapse. Uncontrolled cravings should be treated with improved counselling (support) and/or optimization of pharmacotherapy. Cravings and withdrawal symptoms should be assessed at each contact. Uncontrolled craving/withdrawal symptoms should be treated with increased counselling (support) and/or optimization of pharmacotherapy. To treat cravings, acute formulations of NRT could be combined with standard treatments, but new assessment studies and new effective treatments for craving are required. However, evidence suggests that relapse prevention interventions are likely to be highly cost-effective.

2.5 Prevention of relapse

After quitting smoking, relapse is defined as smoking ≥ 7 cigarettes for seven consecutive days or for two consecutive weeks. Smoking less is defined as a lapse. (For more specific definitions for clinical practice, please refer to *Chapter 4.1.5 Criteria for tobacco abstinence for scientific work*.)

After the quit date, treatment should be tailored to the level of craving and risk of relapse. There is an urgent need for studies validating tools and treatments for this purpose. A high craving score is an important factor in predicting the risk of relapse.

Once lapses have occurred, the following provided interventions may prevent or treat relapse:

- increasing CBT sessions in time, format and number sustains the effectiveness of treatment;
- using nicotine patches for more than 14 weeks plus acute NRT formulations when needed;
- prolonging the use of varenicline from 12 to 24 weeks;
- prolonging the use of buproprion;
- combining medications.

3.0

Brief advice on stopping tobacco use

It is mandatory for all health professionals to provide a minimum of advice on quitting smoking or specific advice to particular patients. Not tackling the issue of tobacco use with a smoking patient is bad practice and aggravates the tobacco dependence of the patient.

3.1 General recommendations

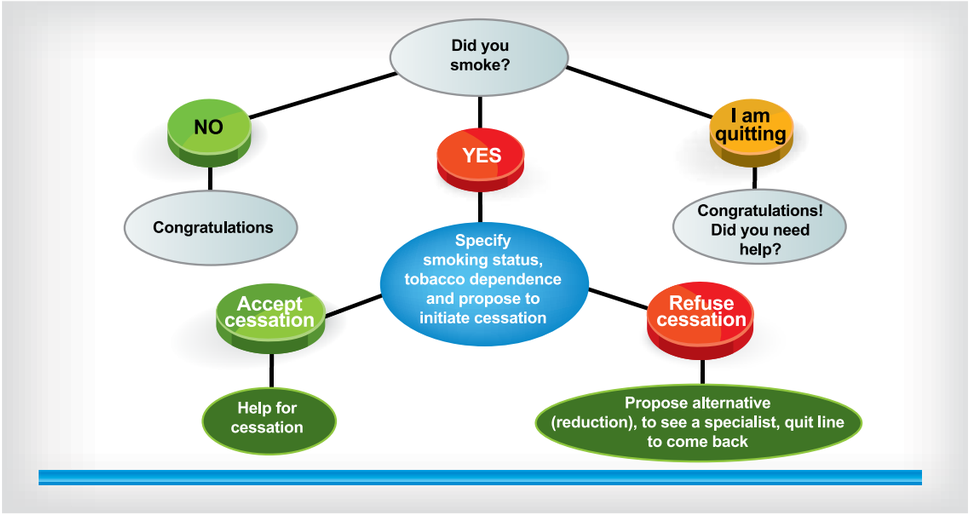
- All doctors should recommend quitting tobacco products to all tobacco consumers. Scientific evidence indicates that advice from a doctor significantly increases smoking abstinence rates (level of evidence A)[1].
- The efficacy of minimum advice is highest at a duration of 3-5 minutes of a doctor's intervention, which leads to an increased long-term smoking abstinence ratio (level of evidence A).

Clear but brief smoking cessation advice provided by any medical service provider significantly increases smoking abstinence rates. Analysis of the duration of the contact time between doctor and patient for this purpose indicates that minimum counselling offered by various clinicians increases the ratio of long-term smoking abstinence. Minimum, brief advice has a substantial public health impact due to the great number of smokers who consult with a clinician every year. All health professionals, i.e. general practitioners, family doctors, occupational doctors, specialized doctors, surgeons, nurses, midwives, dentists, are concerned. It is proven e.g. that dentists and dental technicians can be effective in evaluating and counselling smokers to quit.

3.2 Intervention plan for medical personnel involved in assisting smokers

- Evaluate the smoking status, for every patient, at each medical visit
- Assist all smokers who wish to quit smoking.
- Provide those who are willing to quit smoking with specialized counselling.
- Whenever and wherever possible, direct smokers to a specialized smoking cessation service or quitline.
- Recommend to tobacco-dependent smokers willing to quit to use nicotine substitutes or prescribe medication and offer them specific information and advice about therapy and counselling.

Figure 9: Minimal counselling in general practice



3.3 Recommendations for general practitioners

• All general practitioners or family doctors must routinely advise smoking patients to quit smoking and recommend nicotine substitutes or other medication. It is recommended to note the patient's behaviour in his/her medical records and, if need be, to refer patients for specialized therapy and counselling (level of evidence A).

• Family doctors and nurses must possess both theoretical and practical skills to be able to offer a minimum level of anti-smoking counselling and also to assist a quit attempt and recommend appropriate treatment (level of evidence A).

• Smokers who cannot quit smoking merely by primary action (own willpower, brief medical advice) should receive specialized treatment as a second stage. This strategy is not yet unanimously applied in current practice, but a smoking cessation counselling programme should be initiated as part of primary care and should be continued with second line interventions in a specialized centre (level of evidence C).

• Brief advice gives smokers a pro-quitting motivation when none exists and at the same time it has been shown to increase smoking cessation rates. Many smokers cannot quit smoking without medical

aid: for the most part heavy smokers who are at a higher risk of developing smoking-related diseases and have the greatest need for qualified therapy.

3.4 Recommendation for hospitalized patients

• It is recommended that all categories of medical personnel in hospitals should assess smoking status and should provide minimum smoking cessation advice for all hospitalized patients. Patients must be informed about hospitals' smoke-free status (level of evidence C).

• For hospitalized patients who are current smokers, it is recommended to provide qualified medical assistance to quit smoking (level of evidence A).

3.5 Recommendation for pregnant women

• It is recommended that all categories of medical personnel dealing with pregnant women (gynaecologists, midwives, nurses and GPs) should assess smoking status and provide the minimum smoking cessation advice for all pregnant women who smoke. In this case it is vital for the mother-to-be to quit smoking due to the fact that the strongest adverse effects of smoking occur during the second and the third terms of pregnancy (level of evidence C).

3.6 Recommendation for patients with elective surgery

• As smoking doubles or triples the risk of complications such as wound healing, scarring infection and other side effects, quitting smoking from 6 to 8 weeks before surgery reduces this risk. It is also shown that stopping smoking after an acute operation and maintaining abstinence for 6 weeks nearly halves the risk of complications[2].

• It is essential to inform all patients of the need to quit smoking until the end of the healing process (three weeks for minor surgery and three months for orthopaedic surgery) in order to overcome other risks.

References

1. *Lancaster T, Stead L. Physician advice for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004:CD000165.*
2. *Nåsell H, Adami J, Samnegård E, Tønnesen H, Ponzer S. Effect of smoking cessation intervention on results of acute fracture surgery: a randomized controlled trial. J Bone Joint Surg Am. 2010 Jun;92(6):1335-42.*

PART TWO

Treatment Of Tobacco Dependence

4.0

Standard tobacco treatment interventions

4.1. Therapeutic interventions for tobacco use and tobacco dependence: basic landmarks

4.1.1 Standard approach to quitting smoking

All health professionals are concerned

Tobacco users must become aware of the fact that health benefits of smoking cessation are substantial and stopping smoking reduces the risk of tobacco-related diseases, slows the progression of existing tobacco related disease, and improves life expectancy by an average of 10 years[1]. An overview of the available smoking cessation guidelines[2] showed that it is unanimously recommended to all doctors and all health professionals to regularly identify smokers and note patients' smoking status in their medical records as a routine procedure at each visit.

There are multiple challenges to the clinical treatment of tobacco dependence. Many clinicians have had bad practice and do not consistently provide smoking-cessation treatments to their patients who smoke[3] and only about 20% of smokers are ready to attempt to quit at any given time[4]. Moreover, smokers too often do not use evidence-based treatments and about 90% to 95% of unaided attempts to quit end in failure. Finally, non-adherence to medications and counselling is common, which reduces the chance for successful smoking cessation. Patients typically receive only about 50% of recommended doses of medication and often complete less than half of scheduled counselling sessions[5].
Nevertheless, unaided attempts may result in success and medical doctors must not discourage smokers who have a strong will to quit unaided[6]. It is adequate to invite patients to return after a few weeks to report on their success or to analyse difficulties in starting an assisted quit attempt

Assessment of readiness to quit

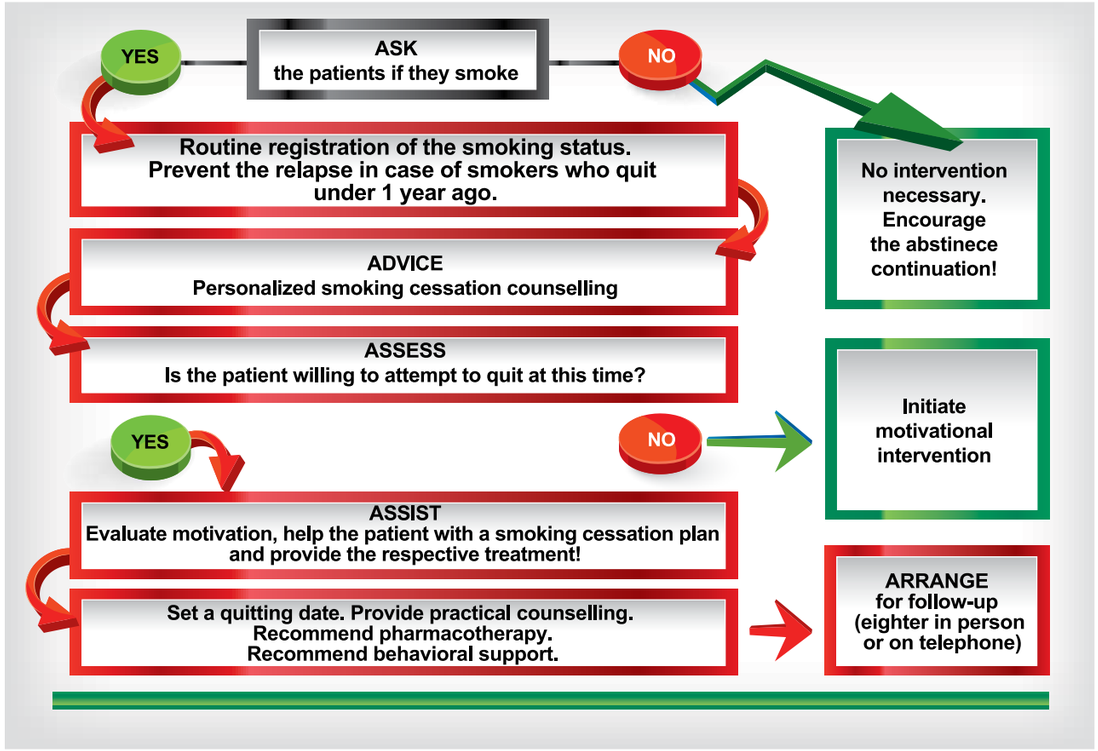
Afterwards, the doctor must advise the patient to quit smoking, evaluate the patient's readiness to quit smoking and assist the patient during the quit attempt, either by himself/herself (if he/she is trained to), or by referral to a specialized smoking cessation service[7].
Thirty years ago several stage-based theoretical models of behaviour were described (Figure 3): pre-contemplation (no intention to quit), contemplation (thinking about quitting), preparation (planning to quit in the next 30 days), action (successful quitting for up to 6 months), maintenance (no smoking for more than six months).

At that time it was taught that people in the (pre-)contemplation stage will need different types of interventions, compared to those in preparation or action. Interventions that support people in quitting tobacco should be tailored to their stage of readiness and should be designed to move them forward through these motivational stages, towards successful quitting, but smokers not ready to quit have to be treated for tobacco dependence. Based on an analysis of stage-based versus non-stage-based counselling or self-help interventions in 31 trials, Cahill et al. found comparable levels of effectiveness. So all tobacco-dependant smokers are treated for smoking cessation by health professionals regardless of the stage of preparation to quit. It is not a solution for the doctor to fail to treat a patient suffering from a cancer or diabetes mellitus saying that the patient needs to be motivated before the doctor starts treatment. Providing practical medical support is more effective than no support at all, and the evidence is not in favour of providing encouragement and treatment only for those smokers in the preparation-action stages[7].

The 5As

Twenty years ago, taking simple steps, (known as: ask, advise, assess, assist, arrange follow-up) defines a practical action plan and a basis for an efficient approach within a standard strategy to quit tobacco. The 5As methodology has been used in all types of smoking cessation interventions – from primary brief advice to the most elaborate ones, like individual or group specialized counselling (Figure 10).

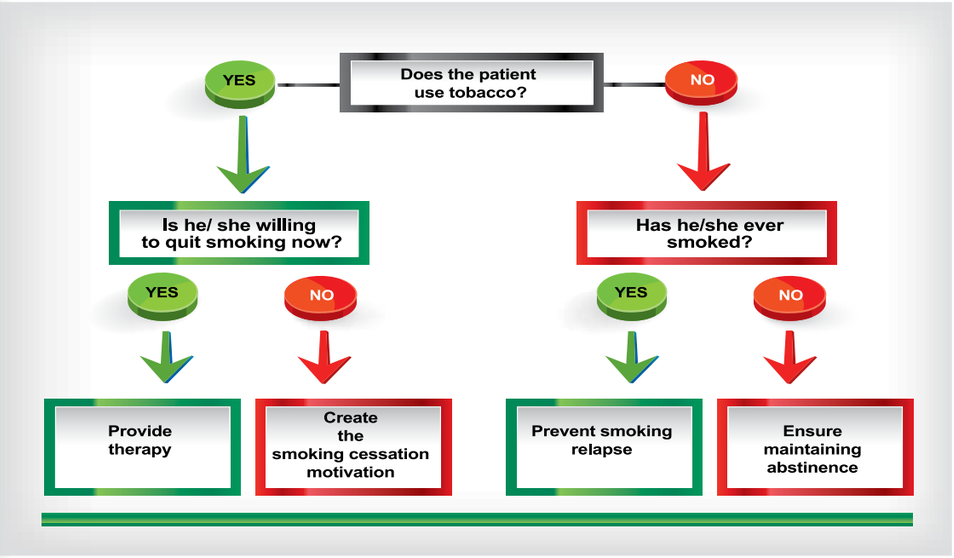
Figure 10: The 5As algorithm to assist smokers in quitting



Analyze readiness to quit

Health care professionals should care for all smokers either motivated or not: all patients should receive medical assistance to quit smoking. Four situations are more frequently encountered in current practice, as shown in Figure 10, depending on the smoking status and the motivational stage.

Figure 11: Quitting smoking in current practice – most frequent situations



For each of them, an adequate solution is given below:

1. For tobacco users who want to quit smoking at the moment of assessment it is recommended to provide them with pharmacotherapy and cognitive-behavioural counselling immediately.
2. For tobacco users who do not want to quit smoking at the moment of assessment it is recommended to use the motivational interview strategy, in order to: encourage quitting/promote pro-cessation motivation/precipitate decision towards stopping smoking as soon as possible in the close future. A meta-analysis of 14 randomized trials showed that, as compared with brief advice or usual care, motivational interviewing increased six-month cessation rates by about 30%. Cessation rates in the two studies involving physician counsellors (who typically received ≥ 2 hours of training) were about 8% with motivational interviewing versus 2% with brief advice or usual care[8]. Also, cessation rates were higher if smokers received two or more counselling sessions rather than one session and if the sessions lasted longer than 20 minutes.

Interventions especially designed for this category of patients proved efficient to strengthen motivation to quit. The 2008 U.S. Public Health Service guideline[9] used components of motivational interviewing to develop an abbreviated intervention that can be used more easily. This 5Rs counselling strategy

focuses on personally relevant reasons to quit, risks associated with continued smoking, rewards for quitting, and road-blocks to successful quitting, with repetition of the counselling at follow-up visits. Such counselling (combined with a later offer of nicotine replacement therapy) was shown in one randomized trial to increase six-month quit rates (24% vs. 4% in the control group).

The 5Rs strategy

The 5Rs strategy, as applied in the case of a smoker not willing to stop smoking immediately, consists of:

- *Relevance*: When discussing with the patient, the doctor should try to answer the question: "Why is smoking cessation important for you in a personal plan?"
- *Risks*: The doctor should try to identify personalized potential health risks of the smoker and to stratify both acute (exacerbations of COPD) and long-term (infertility, cancer) risks.
- *Rewards*: The doctor should show to the patient the personal benefits of stopping smoking.
- *Road-blocks*: The doctor should ask the patient to identify the barriers or obstacles that might impede the success of a quit attempt.
- *Repetition*: Smoking cessation interventions should be delivered repeatedly, whenever the doctor finds the patient is not willing/ready enough to quit smoking.

Interventions that aim to raise motivation towards smoking cessation[10] generally invoke motivational interview methods, such as:

- Expressing empathy through open questions exploring attitude towards smoking ("How important do you think smoking cessation is for you personally?")
- Using reflexive listening technique ("So, do you think smoking helps you keep your current weight?")
- Supporting the patient's right to reject the change ("I understand you are not ready to stop smoking right now. When you are willing to try, I will be here to help you.")
- Developing discrepancies between the patient's current behaviour and the personal values ("You say your family matters a lot to you. How do you think your smoking affects your wife and children?")
- Building the commitment to change ("We are going to help you avoid a heart attack, like your father had.")
- Empathic attitude ("Are you worried about possible withdrawal symptoms?")
- Asking permission to provide information ("Do you agree to learn together with me a few behavioural strategies that will help you face situations that make you smoke?")
- Identifying and rewarding own previous successes ("So, last time you almost succeeded to quit.")
- Providing simple solutions, as small steps on the way towards abstinence: a phone number (toll-free quitline, leaflets to present tips about changing behaviours etc.)

Helping non-motivated smokers to quit

Motivation for quitting smoking is crucial in choosing the therapeutic method for the treatment of tobacco dependence. Some specialists consider that is preferable to provide therapy only for a motivated patient, many specialists now support quitting, without any preamble or based on the so-called " catastrophic pathway". Such theories have been put forward by Larabie[11], as well as by West & Sohal[11 12], who found a higher success ratio in unplanned attempts compared to those planned in advance. These authors state that, especially in patients with respiratory diseases, it is all about a tension accumulation, so that an adverse event, even if minor, can precipitate the change towards the decision to quit[11 12].

From a public health aspect, it is much more effective that all tobacco-dependant smokers receive treatment to quit whatever the motivation is than to treat only the small proportion of smokers motivated to quit, because there is no clear disadvantage in the success of cessation to be initially non-motivated, if the doctor helps the smoker to quit.

Smoking reduction

If the standard approach to cessation fails, another possibility is to encourage and instruct unwilling smokers to reduce their daily smoking substantially and persistently "as much as possible"[13], while they receive nicotine-replacement therapy (NRT). A meta-analysis of seven randomized, controlled trials involving 2767 smokers, who were initially unwilling to quit, showed that the abstinence rate six months after the initiation of treatment was significantly higher among smokers who were randomly assigned to NRT (nicotine gum, inhaler or patch) for six months or more, while trying to reduce their smoking, than among those in the control group: 9% v. 5%[14].

Tobacco users who are recent quitters

As recent quitters are still vulnerable to relapse, especially in the first three to six months after ending treatment, it is recommended that the doctor asks them systematically, at each visit, if they still smoke sometimes or feel the urge to smoke. Their potential risk of relapse to smoking has a maximum intensity at two weeks around quit date, and decreases within the coming weeks. This risk must be evaluated as early as possible. The following questions are very important for this aspect: "Do you still feel the need/urge to smoke?"; "How hard is it for you to refrain from smoking?"
Patients with major relapse risk should be assisted more intensively, including by recommending them to repeat the treatment cure, if it is considered useful.

For successful recent abstainers, it is recommended to encourage abstinence maintenance, to congratulate every small victory and to monitor any risk of relapse carefully.

All patients who recently quit smoking must benefit from a follow-up period with qualified support in

order to maintain non-smoking status. Thus, the doctor will provide them with minimal interventions like cognitive-behavioural counselling to maintain abstinence and to prevent smoking relapse[15]. In case patients notify withdrawal symptoms or increasing smoking appetite, it is indicated to provide them with more intensive counselling in a specialized centre. For those patients who have stopped smoking but do not experience cravings or withdrawal symptoms, follow-up can be done adequately in primary care services.

For never tobacco users

The doctor will reconfirm at each visit the initial non-smoking status and will make brief recommendations, through health-generating messages, to maintain this status. These minor interventions are simple and can be done by any doctor, whether he/she is specialized in smoking cessation or not.

Recommendations

- It is recommended to assess the patient's motivation to quit smoking, once identified and advised to quit (level of evidence C)[9].
- Clinicians should use motivational techniques to encourage those smokers not willing to quit for the moment or in the next future (level of evidence B)[9].
- Interventions that use motivational techniques are considered efficient in determining if the patient makes a future cessation attempt, but all tobacco-dependant smokers have to be treated for cessation whatever the stage of motivation is (level of evidence C).

4.1.2 Effectiveness of treatment for tobacco use and dependence

Research provides support for the effectiveness of counselling and pharmacological interventions, alone or in combination, in increasing smoking-cessation rates among patients who are willing to quit. There is scientific evidence about the efficacy of smoking cessation treatment depending on the therapeutic method used[16].
An overview of the literature demonstrates that results are very modest in patients quitting by their own willpower alone: even though most smokers (80% to 90%) want to quit[15 17], only 30% report a serious attempt to stop using tobacco in the past 12 months and these attempts are successful only in 5% of the cases[18].

Medicine available

The two components that have proved effective in treating tobacco dependence are: counselling and pharmacotherapy. As far as specific pharmacotherapy is concerned, currently numerous medicines are recommended for use – observing the contra-indications and cautions of each medicine. To

summarize, seven medications are approved for smoking cessation by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), as shown in Table 5. In Europe EMEA has approve only NRT, varenicline and bupropion. Nortriptyline is approved as an anti-depressant, but not as a smoking cessation drug. Citizine is registered only in some Eastern European countries.

Table 5: FDA-approved medication (adapted from Fiore M.C.)[19]

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT OF TOBACCO DEPENDENCE

MEDICATION	DOSE	INSTRUCTIONS
BUPROPION	days 1-3: 150 mg each morning; day 4-end: 150 mg x 2/day (at least at 8 hours) for the rest of the cure	Start 1-2 weeks before quit date; Use for 2-6 months
NICOTINE GUM	2 mg – patient smokes ≤24 cigarettes/day 4 mg – patient smokes ≥25 cigarettes/day. The unanimously recommended dose is 8-12 gums chewed/day	Use up to 12 weeks
NICOTINE INHALER	6-16 cartridges/day, a cartridge can deliver 4 mg of nicotine throughout 80 inhalations	Use up to 6 months; taper at end
NICOTINE LOZENGES	doses of 1, 2 and 4 mg; 1 piece every 1-2 hour initially, then taper 2 mg if patient smokes 30 min. or more after waking and 4 mg if patient smokes <30 min. after	Use 3-6 months
NICOTINE NASAL SPRAY	0.5 mg / nostril, initially 1-2 doses/ hour; limits:8-40 doses/day	Use 3-6 months
NICOTINE PATCH	7, 14, 21 mg/24 hr (or 10/15/25 mg/16h) If patient smokes 10 cigarettes/day, 21 mg/day for 4 weeks, then 14 mg/day for 2 weeks, then 7 mg/day for 2 weeks; if patient smokes <10 cigarettes/day, start with 14 mg/day for 6 weeks, then 7 mg/day for 2 weeks	Use new patch every morning for 8-12 weeks

PT.1

PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT OF TOBACCO DEPENDENCE

MEDICATION	DOSE	INSTRUCTIONS
VARENICLINE	days 1-3: 0.5 mg every morning; days 4-7: 0.5 mg twice daily; days 8-end: 1 mg twice daily	Start 1 week before quit date; Use 3–6 months
COMBINATION THERAPIES - only the combination of bupropion SR + nicotine patch has been approved by the FDA for smoking cessation		
NICOTINE PATCH + BUPROPION	Follow instructions for individual medications above	Follow instructions for individual medications above
NICOTINE PATCH + INHALER NICOTINE PATCH + LOZENGES NICOTINE PATCH + GUMS	Follow instructions for individual medications above	Follow instructions for individual medications above

PT.2

In different European countries, various European and national regulatory bodies intervene. For example, varenicline is authorized by the European Medicines Agency (EMEA).

Medications that have been found to be effective aids to smoking cessation, but are not approved for this indication in most countries, include the partial nicotine-receptor antagonist cytisine (approved for this indication in Eastern European countries). The tricyclic anti-depressant nortriptyline, and the anti-hypertensive agent clonidine are registered in many countries, but not for smoking cessation[20].

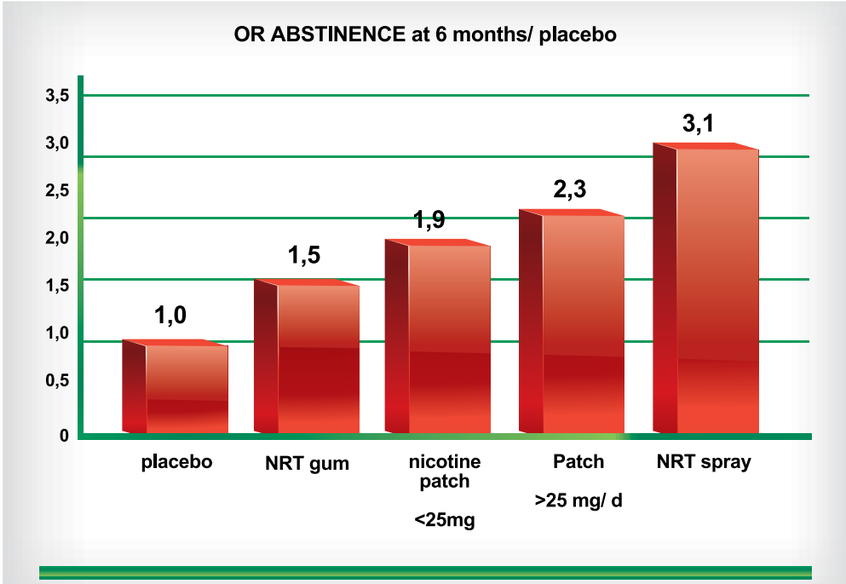
Efficacy of drugs available

A meta-analysis of 83 randomized trials examining the effectiveness of various medications, with respect to the rate of abstinence at six months after treatment, showed that most smoking cessation medications (nicotine patch, gum, lozenge, nasal spray, inhaler, and sustained-release bupropion) approximately doubled the odds of achieving abstinence[8]. More data are available in section 4.2.1. The estimated six-month abstinence rate among patients randomly assigned to placebo was about 14%, compared to 19% to 26% across most pharmacotherapies. (Since some studies included

counselling among other study interventions, these effectiveness rates reflect also some counselling benefit).

By way of contrast, varenicline and combination nicotine-replacement therapy (nicotine patch plus a short-term form of NRT such as nicotine gum or lozenge) were associated with estimated abstinence rates of 33% and 37%, respectively[9]. These rates were significantly higher than the rate associated with a representative monotherapy (nicotine patch). The superiority of these two medications has also been shown in head-to-head trials in which they were compared with single agents such as the nicotine patch or bupropion[21 22]. Medications for smoking cessation have been shown to be effective in real-world health care settings and in smokers with various co-existing conditions (substance abuse and depression)[9 23].

Figure 12: Six-month abstinence expressed by odds ratio compared to controls for various nicotine replacement therapy according to meta-analysis by Michael C. Fiore in the U.S. Physician's Guide to Smoking Cessation (2008)



When counselling is associated with pharmacotherapy, the smoking cessation success ratio increases. There is a consistent relationship between more intensive counselling (with respect to both the duration and number of counselling sessions) and abstinence from smoking[23]. According to a meta-analysis of 35 randomized trials, six-month abstinence rates increased significantly with duration of total counselling contact: about 14% for 1 to 3 minutes of counselling, 19% for 4 to 30 minutes of counselling, and 27% for 31 to 90 minutes of counselling, versus 11% for no counselling. (Some studies included pharmacotherapy across all counselling conditions, so medication also contributed to these success rates[8].) Counselling remains under-used, and a key goal is to increase its use in clinical practice – either face-to-face or by referral to a telephone quitline[9].

4.1.3 Adherence to treatment

Many smokers will not engage in counselling, especially if it involves long sessions or multiple visits. Therefore, patients should be offered options for quitting, including brief and accessible counselling. Non-adherence to medications for smoking cessation is common and is linked with beliefs that they are dangerous, ineffective, and should not be used if a person has had a relapse. Because non-adherence to medication is related to failure to quit, the clinician should discuss with the patient any concerns regarding medications for smoking cessation and should encourage his/her adherence to a given regimen.

Research has shown that making treatment easily available and reducing barriers to treatment increases treatment acceptance. For instance, when treatment is delayed and occurs at a separate location, only 10% or fewer of smokers initiate it, whereas as many as a third of patients enter treatment that is readily accessible[25]. Acceptance of treatment may also be increased by offers to help that are repeated over time, since smokers' interest in quitting can change along lifetime[26].

In other words, there is no miraculous smoking cessation recipe. Any method is welcomed if it results in tobacco abstinence and, implicitly, in a health-generating benefit. In this respect, the way the doctor communicates with a patient who asks for smoking cessation aid is very important. The doctor must take into account that most of the times, smokers who come to a smoking cessation centre, especially if out-patients, do not consider themselves as ill persons, do not even realize that they suffer from an addiction and need medicines as treatment for what they consider more like "a weakness, a lack of will, a bad habit" etc. It is recommended to allocate a separate space where discussion will take place, by stimulating the smoker to talk, without blaming him/her and trying to establish a relationship of collaboration and mutual trust, while all the methods to quit are put at the patient's disposal[27].

Recommendations

- As there is a strong dose-response relationship between the duration of face-to-face sessions and the success of smoking cessation therapy, intensive interventions are more efficient than less intensive ones and should be used whenever possible (level of evidence A)[9].

- Clinicians should encourage all patients to use efficient medications for treating tobacco dependence (level of evidence A)[9].

- Clinicians should provide all smokers willing to quit with treatment in a format of minimum four face-to-face counselling sessions. This has proven efficient in increasing the abstinence ratio (level of evidence A)[9].

- The combination of counselling and pharmacotherapy for treating nicotine dependence is more efficient for smoking cessation than each of the two methods taken separately. That is why it is recommended to associate both methods any time when possible (level of evidence A)[24].

- When it is not possible to use pharmacological treatment, using non-pharmacological therapy remains recommended, so that all smokers will receive therapeutic support, given that treatment of tobacco dependence was proved to be efficient (level of evidence A)[24].

4.1.4 Health care systems approach for tobacco use and dependence treatments

The consistent, effective delivery of an intervention for stopping tobacco use requires support from the health care systems. Smokers are significantly more likely to make an attempt to quit if tobacco treatment is covered by health insurance[27]. Because of the health and cost benefits of smoking cessation, more insurance companies now plan to cover evidence-based cessation treatments; for example, in 2010, the US company Medicare expanded its counselling coverage to all smokers (4 million persons), not just to those with a smoking-related disease. Moreover, the use of electronic health records to prompt physicians and clinic staff to systematically identify and treat smokers has been associated with increased rates of documentation of smoking status and may also increase the use of treatments for smoking cessation[29]. Clinician training and performance feedback, dedicated staff to deliver treatments, and "fax to quit" programmes that link patients with tobacco quitlines nationwide, also increase cessation rates.

The health care systems worldwide take into consideration ensuring the minimal conditions to assist smokers towards cessation, depending on their existing local possibilities and resources: identifying smokers, recommending them to stop smoking, facilitating access to therapy. There is scientific evidence about successful cessation when free of charge treatments are available[30].

4.1.5 Criteria for tobacco abstinence for scientific work

A smoking cessation treatment is considered successful when tobacco abstinence has been achieved.

Definition for scientific evaluation

Abstinence as defined for scientific work and clinical research is based on the six adapted Russell criteria, as listed below[24]:

1. *Duration of abstinence:* it is appreciated as an abstinence affirmation criterion a timeframe of minimum 6 months since the date set for and the actual achievement of smoking cessation.
2. *Definition of abstinence:* the patient reporting a consumption of < 7cigarettes in the six months since he/she stopped smoking, together with a negative result of the carbon monoxide test in exhaled air. A distinction should be made between abstinence at the moment (peak abstinence) determined at the moment of the medical visit and continuous abstinence, appreciated through serial visits throughout 6-12 month follow-up.
3. Mandatory bio-chemical validation of abstinence: it is recommended to determine the carbon monoxide (CO) concentration in the exhaled air at each visit; this is mandatory in the end-of-treatment visit.
4. *Defining intention to follow the correct treatment cure:* the abstinence ratio is determined considering all the subjects who received treatment, carried out the complete cure and attended all follow-up visits. Those patients lost in follow-up (by changing home address, phone number etc.) will be considered as still active smokers, being kept in the smoking cessation centre database.
5. *Definition of the "correct treatment cure":* abstinence is confirmed according to criteria 1-4, only in the case of those patients who followed the correct treatment – in standard doses, did not add other therapies to the therapeutic scheme by their own, and attended all follow-up visits, with biochemical validation of the smoking status.
6. *Data collection* should be done through double-blind methods, when possible.

Definitions for clinical practice

For clinical practice, we recommend that abstinence should be confirmed after six weeks of tobacco abstinence post quit date, with an allowed grace period of two weeks. Also, abstinence is established when a subject's self-declaration not to have smoked or used tobacco is confirmed by CO_{exp} below 7 ppm. A "grace period" is a period immediately after the quit date or intervention in which continued smoking is not counted as a failure.

Other definitions useful for clinical practice purposes are also given here.

"Quitters" are individuals who do not smoke any day at least for 24 hours.

A *"lapse"* denotes a slip back to smoking after a prior period of abstinence. This may be the case of quitters and ex-smokers who smoke less than one cigarette per day in up to three days in one week, or smoke any number of cigarettes one day in one week in the week before any scheduled visit. A lapse may be an isolated event that is followed by a renewal of abstinence, or it is a strong predictor of relapse.

"Relapse" typically refers to a period of several days or more of continuous smoking after a period of abstinence. *"Failures"* or *"relapses"* mean daily smoking for at least three days after a period of at least 24 hours without any smoking.

Recommendations

- In any therapeutic intervention for tobacco dependence, all patients will be evaluated if abstinent, both in follow-up and at the end of treatment (level of evidence C).
- It is recommended to validate abstinence and intensively assist recent quitters, as in this stage they may face cravings or other difficulties (level of evidence C).
- For those who return to smoking, a new evaluation is recommended, with careful appreciation of motivation to make a new quit attempt (level of evidence C)[9].

4.1.6 Therapeutic intervention to stop smoking is mandatory

Article 14 of the Framework Convention on Tobacco Control[31] states that every country should provide smoking cessation assistance, and implementation of this approach is now being considered by many

countries[32]. Assistance with quitting should be a major part of a country's tobacco control strategy despite many misconceptions and errors often encountered against this viewpoint.

In an editorial published in 2010, West and colleagues[33] countered four such fallacies in a constructive debate about the role of cessation assistance.

"Most smokers stop without help, so providing assistance may seem unnecessary."
This is incorrect as the fact that most smokers who stop do so without assistance does not mean that this is the most effective method of stopping; it only reflects the fact that the numbers attempting to stop without assistance are considerably greater than those trying to stop with it, but evidence shows unassisted attempts are four times less effective.

"Promoting help with stopping may make smokers think they are addicted, so fewer will try to stop."
This is false, as evidence shows smokers who believed they were addicted were actually more likely to make quit attempts than other smokers[32].

"The results of research into assisted cessation do not apply to the real world."
This is false, as an evaluation of the English smoking cessation services has found that nearly one in seven smokers (14.6%) were carbon monoxide-validated quitters one year after receiving treatment, a proportion similar to the outcomes found in clinical trials[34], and substantially higher than those achieved without support.

"Other tobacco control interventions are more cost-effective, particularly mass media campaigns"
This is not true, as cost-effectiveness of interventions to assist cessation has been evaluated rigorously from randomized controlled trial data supplemented by data from the 'real world' and found to be excellent[32], while many other tobacco control interventions' estimates of effectiveness rely upon more circumstantial data and interferences. Also, a false dichotomy between clinical interventions and other tobacco control interventions should not be created, as long as different interventions serve different functions and they work in synergy with each other. The appropriate mix of interventions will depend upon particular circumstances in every country/region at any given time[35].

Hence, as health benefits of smoking cessation are well documented and helping people quit is cost-effective compared with other measures in the health sector[36], it is mandatory that any smoker identified through a medical visit is offered the opportunity to receive medical aid to stop smoking.

Smoking cessation services across Europe are characterized by a high level of heterogeneity. For the moment, while the UK has put greater emphasis on assisting smokers to stop than other countries,

in many European countries, most of the smokers that address a smoking cessation centre, have not previously benefitted from brief advice or any other qualified intervention to assist them for smoking cessation. Just a minority among them represent a population aware of the dangers of continuing smoking or having received minimal verbal recommendations to quit, maybe even pharmacotherapy or counselling.

Countries must set realistic performance targets for both the number of people using cessation services and the proportion who successfully quit smoking. These targets should reflect demographics of the local population. Services should aim to treat at least 5% of the estimated local population of people who smoke or use tobacco in any form, each year, and also aim for a success rate of at least 35% at four weeks, validated by carbon monoxide monitoring. This figure should be based on all those who start treatment, with success defined as not having smoked in the third and fourth week after the quit date.

Success should be validated by a CO monitor reading of less than 7 ppm at the four-week point. This does not imply that treatment should stop at four weeks[37].

Recommendations

- All doctors should recommend smoking cessation to each smoking patient. There is evidence according to which medical advice increases significantly the smoking abstinence ratio (level of evidence A).

- During regular medical visits, general practitioners have the obligation to advise the smoking patients to completely stop smoking, to prescribe them treatment for nicotine dependence/to refer them to a specialized smoking cessation centre, at least once a year. These medical gestures must be noted in the patient's medical records (level of evidence A).

- Any time possible, current smokers who are hospitalized must receive from their clinician the same interventions recommended to general practitioners: brief quit smoking advice/smoking cessation counselling, prescription of pharmacotherapy for nicotine dependence or referral to a specialized smoking cessation counsellor/centre (level of evidence A).

4.1.7 Types of smoking cessation interventions

In current practice, there are four major types of cessation interventions:

4.1.7.1Minimal (brief advice)

This type of intervention lasts for a maximum of 3 to 5 minutes (as level 1 intervention) – recommended in primary medical care, and family doctors, dentists, all categories of specialists.

Brief advice represents “a sum of verbal indications to stop smoking, given in medical terms and by adding information about harmful effects of smoking”. It can be offered by any doctor or health professional representative treating smoking patients and is one of the cheapest smoking cessation interventions. When applied alone, it has a very low impact: just 1 out of 40 smokers succeed in quitting smoking[24]. When routinely administered to all patients, as a basic, systematic intervention, followed by referral to a specialized centre, it becomes a very strong therapeutic tool.

Minimum advice is recommended to all categories of smokers, ex-smokers, as well as to those who have never smoked. Providing a brief period of counselling (3 minutes) is more effective than simply advising the patient to quit, and doubles the cessation rate, as compared with no intervention[38].

The health care system should offer treatment as a back-up to brief opportunistic interventions for those smokers who need more intensive support. This support can be offered either individually or in groups, and should include coping skills, training and social support.

4.1.7.2 Treatment of tobacco dependence by GPs or other non-specialized doctors

GPs treat many case of chronic disease, such as diabetes mellitus, blood hypertension and may treat tobacco dependence, as well as other chronic diseases.

4.1.7.3 Specialized individual interventions towards stopping smoking

As a level 2 intervention, this is recommended in tobacco cessation services with their own trained doctor, nurse, or psychologist, if available.

The treatment consists of medication that has been proven to be effective in treating nicotine addiction and a series of cognitive-behavioural counselling sessions delivered individually. Specialists use the term “counselling” to define the specific cognitive-behavioural assistance given to patients under treatment to quit smoking. The counselling sessions have the role to provide smokers with knowledge about the smoking cessation process and with solutions for overcoming obstacles during the quit attempt.

Usually provided by a team (doctor, nurse and – optionally – psychologist) trained in the field of smoking cessation, the specialized intervention entails assisting an already informed patient having received minimal quitting advice, but now asking for qualified help. The doctor has the main role in this process, since he/she has the responsibility to recommend and advise pharmacotherapy; the nurse helps filling in the documentation, completing the database, laboratory tests etc. and can even provide minimum advice. The psychologist helps the intervention by adding elements of psychological support and cognitive-behavioural techniques.

Optimally, individual smoking cessation strategies combine advice (i.e. recommendation to quit smoking) with pharmacological treatment (varenicline, bupropion, NRT etc.) and with cognitive-behavioural therapy. Also, leaflets, posters, brochures, different self-help written materials, together with Internet tools or telephone quitlines can be very useful. Sometimes, such self-help methods can provide enough knowledge in order to start the cessation process, allowing a motivated individual to try to quit alone, without any specialist intervention[24]. These are also useful because they help doctors save time. However, the therapeutic impact of a single use of such quitting tools is very low, by comparison to minimum advice as received from a doctor.

The patient’s long term follow-up, by monitoring the cessation process and the possible side effects of pharmacotherapy, is very important. Smoking status must be checked at each follow-up visit and objectively assessed by determining carbon monoxide concentration in the exhaled air. Measuring the cotinine in urine, blood, saliva or hair also provides useful information about the organism’s exposure to tobacco, but this needs to be adjusted in the case of smokers under nicotine substitution therapy, as pharmaceutical nicotine adds to nicotine from tobacco, if the patient still smokes[10 39].

Usual format intervention: this consists of several (minimum four) sessions lasting 20-45 minutes through 9-12 treatment weeks.

In the first consultation, the patient is briefly introduced to the available treatments, warned about withdrawal symptoms and agrees on the most suitable solutions. The initial contact must be an opportunity for assessing chances for success and the risks of relapse.

During the 9-12 week standard treatment cure, regardless of therapy indicated, it is recommended to follow up all patients by means of control visits (at least two) in order to be certain that the patient follows the correct treatment, in standard doses in the case of pharmacotherapy, faces up to psycho-behavioural difficulties or withdrawal symptoms and there are no adverse effects of medication. Control visits allow the doctor to obtain an update of the smoking status, to monitor biomarkers of tobacco use and to prevent lapses or relapses. These visits offer an opportunity to provide prompt

support – the doctor can intervene right on time in case the smoker is discouraged or has a slip after a short temporary abstinence. The most important control visit is the first one – it is recommended to schedule it immediately after the target quit day.

Most specialists recommend setting the quit date in the second week of treatment. However, depending on both the doctor's expertise and the smoker's profile, it should be noted that the specialist may recommend another quit date, for example in weeks 3 to 6, as the case may be.

The final treatment consultation takes place when the treatment ends, usually two to three months after the initial consultation, and aims mainly to evaluate tobacco abstinence as a result of the treatment. On this occasion, the smoking status should be again evaluated clinically and biologically. The smoking appetite should also be assessed, as well as the way the subject faces challenging situations in relation to smoking. Withdrawal symptoms and the side effects of pharmacotherapy must be audited. At the same time, the patient who has stopped smoking should receive counselling with the aim of maintaining abstinence and preventing smoking recurrence. Patients who have not succeeded in stopping smoking should be re-assessed, in order to start another quit attempt.

The specialized smoking cessation intervention in its individual format is the most recommended approach for treating tobacco dependence. An intensive programme with weekly visits, personal consultations with a respiratory physician and use of pharmacotherapy may increase the cessation rate of motivated smokers trying to quit, and this can be more easily provided by specialized tobacco cessation centres. However, as tobacco smoking involves an addiction to nicotine, the highest one-year quit rate to be expected is 25% to 40%[38].

4.1.7.4 Specialized group intervention towards stopping smoking

Numerous smoking cessation programmes include group strategies based on interactive educational methods and better access to treatment and psychological support. Group programmes may also include pro-active support lines, where available, which are very useful tools.

A well-tested group format includes around five one-hour sessions over one-month duration with follow-up visits. Intensive support should include the offer or encouragement to use pharmacotherapy (as appropriate) and clear advice and instructions on how to use it[38].
Group counselling should be done by specially trained counsellors, able to make smokers interact and share own withdrawal fears and barriers, but at the same time learn from collective experience. This can also be delivered as weekly sessions and with the help of auxiliary personnel (nurses, trained facilitators, psychologists etc.). In any case, a group approach may be kept as an alternative for those

patients who communicate better in a group, but where available it can also be integrated into individual treatment in order to consolidate the therapeutic intervention.

It is advisable to offer individual (i.e. face-to-face) and group interventions to better suit and satisfy patients, who should be screened to diagnose major psychiatric disorders. Exclusion criteria for group treatment could be personality disorders or pronounced psycho-pathological traits (e.g. narcissistic or histrionic disturbances, anxiety, social phobia, strong manipulative attitudes, schizophrenic behaviour or multi-problematic cases as in the case of multiple dependencies). Widespread group models usually consist of 5-10 sessions over a two- to three-month treatment period.

References

1 *Stop Smoking Wales Annual Report 2010-2011, Stop Smoking Wales Editorial Group, 15/08/2011, stop.smoking@wales.nhs.uk*

2 *Gratziou C., Review of current smoking cessation guidelines, Eur.Respir.Mon.,2008, 42, 3543*

3 *Shiffman S, Brockwell SE, Pillitteri JL, Gitchell JG, Use of smoking-cessation treatments in the United States, Am J Prev Med 2008;34:102-11*

4 *National Cancer Institute, Cancer trends progress report — 2009/2010 update, http://progressreport.cancer.gov*

5 *Shiffman S, Sweeney CT, Ferguson SG, Sembower MA, Gitchell JG, Relationship between adherence to daily nicotine patch use and treatment efficacy: secondary analysis of a 10-week randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial simulating over-the-counter use in adult smokers. Clin Ther 2008;30:1852-8*

6 *Pierce JP, Cummins SE, White MM, Humphrey A, Messer K, Quitlines and nicotine replacement for smoking cessation: do we need to change policy? Annu Rev Public Health. 2012 Apr;33:341-56.*

7 *Cahill K, Lancaster T, Green N. Stage-based interventions for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 11. Art. No.: CD004492. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004492.pub4*

8 *Lai DT, Cahill K, Qin Y, Tang JL. Motivational interviewing for smoking cessation, Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010; 1:CD006936*

9 *Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al. Treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update. Rockville, MD: Department of Health and Human Services, U.S. Public Health Service, 2008*

10 *Fagerstrom K.O., Assessment of the patient, in Smoking Cessation European Respiratory Monograph, 2008, 42, 4450, ISSN 1025448x*

11 *Larabie LC. To what extent do smokers plan quit attempts? Tob Control 2005; 14: 425–428*

12 *West R, Sohal T., 'Catastrophic' pathways to smoking cessation: findings from national survey. BMJ 2006; 332: 458–460*

13 *Wennike P, Danielsson T, Landfeldt B, Westin A, Tonnesen P. Smoking reduction promotes smoking*

cessation: results from a double blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of nicotine gum with 2-year follow-up, Addiction 2003; 98:1395-402

14 *Moore D, Aveyard P, Connock M, Wang D, Fry-Smith A, Barton P. Effectiveness and safety of nicotine replacement therapy assisted reduction to stop smoking: systematic review and meta-analysis, BMJ 2009; 338:b1024*

15 *Lancaster T, Stead L. Physician advice for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004:CD000165*

16 *Lancaster T, Stead LF. Individual behavioral counselling for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005; 2:CD001292*

17 *CDC: Cigarette smoking among adults—United States, 1995. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 1997; 46: 1217–20*

18 *Andreas S.,Hering T., Muhlig S., Nowak D., Raupach T., Worth H.,Smoking Cessation in Chronic Obstructive Disease an Effective Medical Intervention, Deutsches Ärzteblatt International Dtsch Arztebl Int 2009; 106(16): 276–82*

19 *Fiore M.C., Baker T.B., Treating Smokers in the Health Care Setting, N Engl J Med 2011;365:1222-31*

20 *Batra A. Treatment of Tobacco dependence, Deutsches Ärzteblatt International 2011; 108(33): 555–64)*

21 *Piper ME, Smith SS, Schlam TR, et al., A randomized placebo-controlled clinical trial of 5 smoking cessation pharmacotherapies, Arch Gen Psychiatry 2009;66: 1253-62. [Erratum, Arch Gen Psychiatry 2010;67:77*

22 *Gonzales D, Rennard SI, Nides M, et al., Varenicline, an alpha4beta2 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor partial agonist, vs sustained-release Bupropion and placebo for smoking cessation: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2006;296:47-55*

23 *Smith SS, McCarthy DE, Japuntich SJ. et al., Comparative effectiveness of 5 smoking cessation pharmacotherapy in primary care clinics. Arch Intern Med 2009; 169:2148-55*

24 *Trofor A., Mihaltan F., Mihaicuta S., Pop M., Todea D et.al., Romanian Society of Pulmonologists Smoking Cessation and Smoker's Assistance Guidelines (GREFA), 2-nd ed. – Tehnopress Iași, 2010, www.srp.ro*

25 *Fiore MC, McCarthy DE, Jackson TC, et al. Integrating smoking cessation treatment into primary care: an effectiveness study, Prev Med 2004;38:412-20*

26 *Peters EN, Hughes JR. The day-to-day process of stopping or reducing smoking: a prospective study of self-changers. Nicotine Tob Res 2009;11:1083-92. [Erratum, Nicotine Tobacco Res 2010;12:77.]*

27 *Fagerstrom K.O., How to communicate with the smoking patient, Eur.Respir.Mon.,2008, 42, 5760*

28 *Curry SJ, Grothaus LC, McAfee T, Pabiniak C. Use and cost effectiveness of smoking-cessation services under four insurance plans in a health maintenance organization. N Engl J Med 1998;339: 673-9*

29 *Lindholm C, Adsit R, Bain P, et al. A demonstration project for using the electronic health record to identify and treat tobacco users, WMJ 010;109:335-40*

30 *Kaper J, Wagena EJ, Willemsen MC, et al. Reimbursement for smoking cessation treatment may double the abstinence rate: results of a randomized trial, Addiction 2005;100:101220*

31 *World Health Organization (WHO), Framework Convention on Tobacco Control. Geneva: WHO; 2003*

32 *West R., Mc Neill A., Britton J., Baudl L., Raw M., Hajek P., Arnott D., Jarvis M., Stapleton J., Should smokers be offered assistance with stopping? Addiction, 105, 1867–1869*

33 *West R., Mc Neill A., Britton J., Baudl L., Raw M., Hajek P., Arnott D., Jarvis M., Stapleton J., Should smokers be offered assistance with stopping? Addiction,2010, 105, 1867–1869*

34 *Ferguson J., Bauld L., Chesterman J., Judge K. The English smoking treatment services: one-year outcomes, Addiction 2005; 100: 59–69*

35 *Bala M., Strzeszynski L., Cahill K. Mass media interventions for smoking cessation in adults, Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008; CD004704*

36 *Norway's National Strategyfor Tobacco Control 2006-2010, The Norwegian Ministry of Health and Care Services*

37 *Smoking cessation services in primary care, pharmacies, local authorities and workplaces, particularly for manual working groups, pregnant women and hard to reach communities, NICE public health guidance 10, Aug. 2008, www.nice.org.uk*

38 *Gratziou C., Tønnesen P., Smoking cessation and prevention, Eur Respir Mon, 2006, 38, 242–257*

39 *Etter JF, Duc TV, Perneger TV, Saliva cotinine levels in smokers and non-smokers, Am J Epidemiology 2000; 151: 251–258*

4.2 Pharmacological treatment of tobacco dependence

Since smoking is a chronic disease, it imposes a therapeutic intervention with multiple components, amongst which pharmacological therapy is crucial. Nicotine dependence pharmacotherapy comprises an extensive range of medications, from nicotine substitutes used in various forms (gum, patch, nasal spray, inhaler, sublingual tablet), to anti-depressants, nicotine receptor antagonists, etc. Two categories of medicines are indicated for smoking cessation: first line medication and second line medication.

First line medication has proved efficient for treating Tobacco dependence, has a higher safety level and is FDA-approved. First line medication must be the first option for any clinician treating nicotine dependence.

Second line medication recommended for smoking cessation is represented by medicines with proven efficacy, but to a smaller extent than in the case of first line medication, either because they are not FDA- or EMEA-approved for tobacco dependence treatment or because they are suspected of having greater side effects than first line medication. Generally, they are recommended when first line medication cannot be used for various reasons (lack of efficacy, contra-indications etc.).
As experience in this field made by specialists in the last years has demonstrated, obvious progress has been made concerning the efficacy of drugs used for quitting tobacco. Thus, besides mono-therapy, a combination of various pharmacological therapies can be used, prolonging the therapy duration, adjusting the dosages to avoid side effects, combining adjuvant methods (hypnosis, acupuncture etc.) with the aim of using existing pharmacological therapies as judiciously as possible.

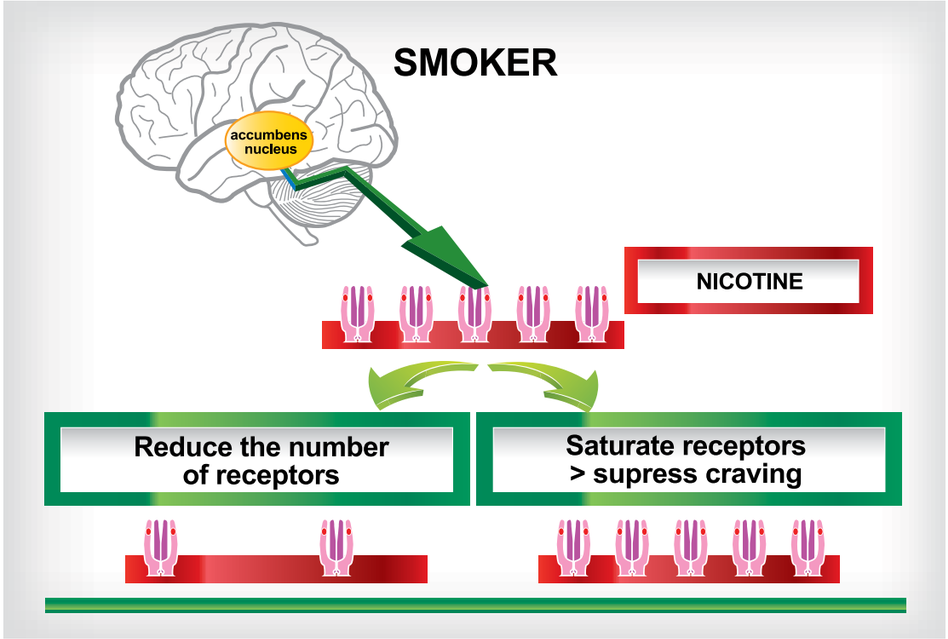
4.2.1. Treatment with NRT

4.2.1.1 Mechanism of action

Nicotine delivered by tobacco smoke or chewing and nicotine delivered by NRT is the same nicotine, but the kinetics of delivery to the brain is radically different changing dramatically the effects.

Nicotine replacement therapy has two aims:
- fill the nicotine receptors to remove the craving and other withdrawal symptoms: the effect is immediate;
- reduce the number of nicotinic receptors: this decline continues over weeks and reduces tobacco dependence.

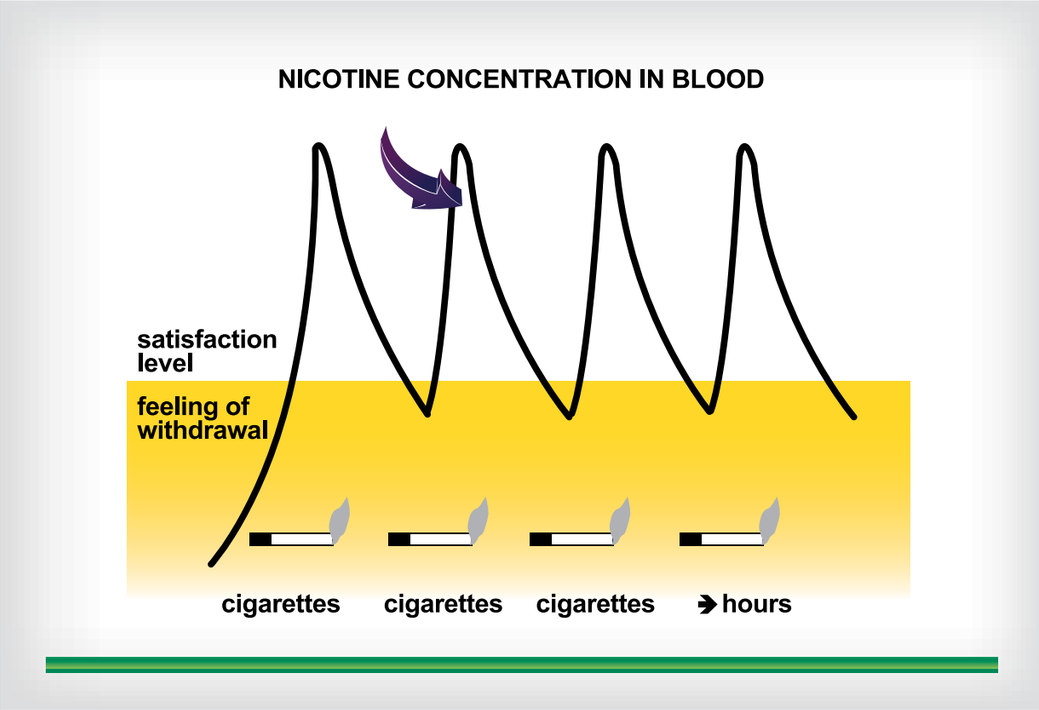
Figure 13: The two objectives of nicotine replacement therapy: decrease withdrawal syndrome (acute) and reduce addiction by reducing the number of receptors (chronic)



When smoking a cigarette, nicotine reaches the smoker's brain within 7 seconds and gives the receptors with a saturating "shoot effect", far surpassing the expected level of nicotine (Figure 14).

The cells in the brain area involved react by desensitizing the receptors and multiplying their number and thus the need for another cigarette. Smokers have many more nicotine receptors than non-smokers, explaining the high tolerance to nicotine in smokers, as well as their strong nicotine addiction. These receptors are so many that they could be highlighted by positron emission tomography: a centre of nicotine addiction that brightens the area of the nucleus accumbens and the anterior tegmental area where the nicotinic receptors are mainly located in the brain.

Figure 14: Evolution of nicotine levels in the cerebral arteries with repeated nicotine consumption.



Nicotine replacement therapy delivers nicotine to the brain much more slowly than cigarettes, producing no peaks. It is thus able to saturate the nicotine receptors, so eliminating the need for nicotine, without stimulating the receptors, thus producing progressively fewer receptors, which after three months of NRT will return to normal number. However, these cells retain the memory of smoking and could be multiplied very rapidly on the cell membrane if smoking is resumed: tobacco dependence is therefore a chronic relapsing disease.

4.2.1.2 Clinical evidence for the efficacy of NRT

As with the treatment of all chronic diseases, treatment of tobacco dependence has been the subject of many randomized trials made in the past 40 years.

The major meta-analyses include those of the Cochrane Collaboration[1,2,3,4], which examines in more than 40 analyses the effectiveness of different aspects of nicotine replacement therapy and the final report of the U.S. Surgeon General, co-ordinated by Michael C. Fiore, in the guide to smoking cessation for general practitioners[5]. These data are consistent because they are based on the same studies. All these analyses reported the effectiveness of recommended treatments and are cited in this guide. These analyses report that smoking cessation treatment is not fully effective and that failures may occur as relapse during or after the treatment of tobacco addiction as a chronic disease.

Meta-analysis by the Cochrane Collaboration

The Cochrane Collaboration identified 132 trials of nicotine replacement products, 111 trials involving over 40,000 participants compared the different types of nicotine replacement therapy to a placebo or a control group without nicotine replacement therapy.

RR (relative risk) of abstinence from all forms of substitute versus control is 1.58 (95% confidence interval [CI]: 1.50 to 1.66).

The RR for each type was:
- 1.43 (95% CI: 1.33 to 1.53, 53 trials) for nicotine gum,
- 1.66 (95% CI: 1.53 to 1.81, 41 trials) for nicotine patches,
- 1.90 (95% CI: 1.36 to 2.67s, 4 trials) for nicotine inhaler,
- (95% CI: 1.63 to 2.45, 6 trials) substitutes for oral/lozenges,
- (95% CI: 1.49 to 3.73, 4 trials) for nicotine nasal spray.

The results are independent of the duration of treatment, the intensity of the additional assistance provided or the context in which the NRT was issued.
The effect is similar to a small group of studies to evaluate the use of nicotine replacement therapy without prescription.

In the case of highly dependent smokers, there was a significant benefit of 4 mg gum compared with 2 mg gum, but evidence of a benefit of higher doses of patch are lower in the studies currently available. The lack of studies concerning high doses is regrettable.

The Cochrane Collaboration authors concluded that all commercially available forms of NRT (gum, transdermal patch, nasal spray, inhaler and sublingual tablets) can help smokers in their quit attempts and increase their chances of success. Substitutes increase the discontinuation rates of 50%-70%, regardless of type and dose.

The effectiveness of nicotine replacement therapy is not fully independent of the intensity of the additional assistance provided to the smoker. The more support there is, the greater the benefit, but even in the absence of any support nicotine substitutes are effective.

Meta-analysis by Michael C. Fiore

Data from the meta-analysis by Michael C. Fiore relate to the discontinuation rates at six months compared to placebo.

The observed difference in efficacy between patches and oral forms may be dose-related, because it is more common to examine dosage with oral forms that are given in fixed dose clinical trials.

4.2.1.3 NRT in combination with pharmacotherapy

The Cochrane Collaboration has shown that combining nicotine patches with oral forms is more efficient than using a single type of nicotine replacement.

- NRT may be used in combination with oral and transdermal forms;
- NRT may be used in combination with bupropion or nortriptyline;
- NRT may not be used in combination with varenicline for smoking cessation because pharmaceutical nicotine as tobacco nicotine was blocked by varenicline, but in patients who continue to smoke few cigarettes after 2 to 6 weeks of varenicline there is no contra-indication to replace theses cigarettes by NRT; nevertheless evidence of such strategy used by many patients is missing.

4.2.1.4 Indications

Nicotine replacement therapy is proposed as first-line treatment for smoking cessation in tobacco users motivated and not motivated to stop. It is also a product that can be used for a time to reduce smoking prevalence when quitting is not possible or accepted by the tobacco user. Its role in relapse prevention and management of tobacco dependence of a subject who quits tobacco, but who experiences cravings is the subject of a study.

4.2.1.5 Smoking reduction with nicotine replacement

Smoking reduction with nicotine replacement therapy is only recommended in a dependant smoker, i.e. a smoker in whom the large number of nicotinic receptors and their desensitization is an important factor in consumption[6] among those with a Fagerström score greater than 3, or even greater than 6.
Reduce smoking should be proposed systematically to highly dependent smokers with a score of 7 or more in the Fagerström test, having a tobacco-related disease and not ready to quit smoking.

Smoking reduction is not a healthy alternative to cessation. Reduction has to be a step towards later cessation for smokers who cannot or will not stop smoking. The goal remains complete smoking cessation.

It is plausible, but not confirmed that reducing smoking causes a reduction in risk attributable to tobacco:
- with the drop in CO and inhaled ultrafine particles, a reduction of cardiovascular risk is plausible;
- with the reduction of inhaled ultrafine particles and irritants, a reduction of development of COPD is demonstrated in one study (Lung Health Study [7]).

The justified fear of health authorities, which must also be the fear of every doctor, is to imply that there are less dangerous tobacco products. The tobacco industry has used those arguments for years to promote smoking. Healthier cigarettes, low tar cigarettes, filtered cigarettes, waterpipes and smokeless tobacco. These are all deceptions. All these tobacco products maintain nicotine addiction in consumers, thus maintaining the tobacco market.

There was concern that the proposed reduction of smoking for some smokers would decrease the quit rate. There is no data to support this concern; the opposite effect has even been observed. Patients not willing to stop, but who were proposed to reduce smoking, are more likely to be abstinent at one year than those who were not proposed to reduce smoking, but were offered a complete stop as the only solution [8].

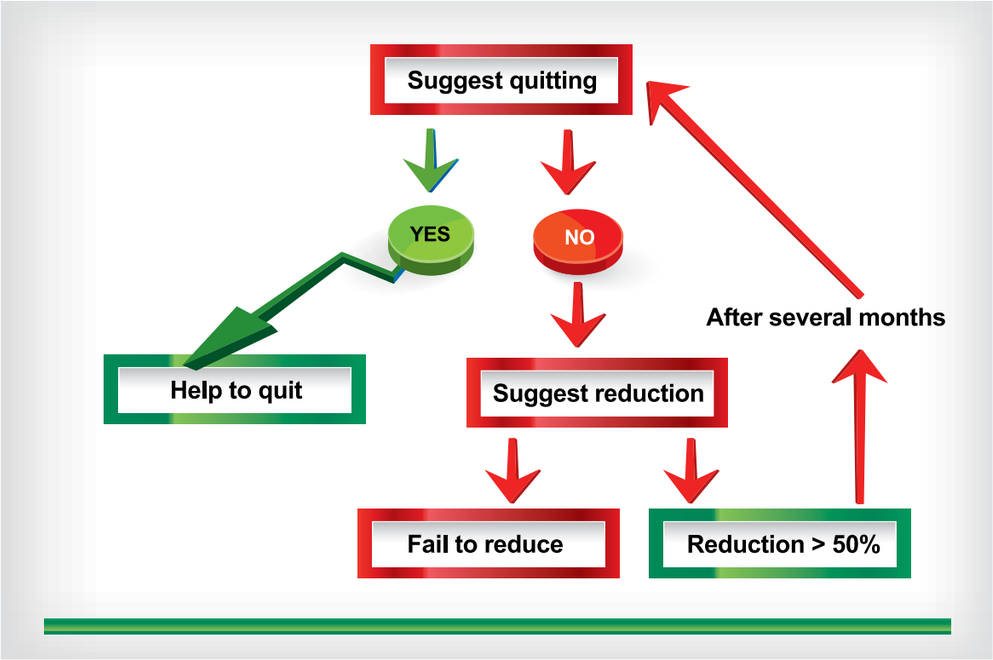
Smoking reduction is proposed as a second-line option for smokers who are unwilling or unable to stop smoking completely.

This strategy is particularly useful to implement in smokers with tobacco-related disease. Initial studies were conducted in patients with COPD.

If stopping smoking is always better, at least for a time palliative therapy is of two-fold interest in smokers resistant to quitting:
- reducing smoking and thus at least some of the risks involved in smoking;
- increases patient's confidence in his/her ability to stop completely and increases the number of quit attempts in the year.

Nicotine replacement therapy is used as a substitution as the number of cigarettes smoked per day is reduced and so the harmful effects of tobacco products (other than nicotine) are potentially reduced. More nicotine is delivered in a more progressive way, so with less maintenance of addiction.
Pharmaceutical nicotine will increase gradually until a reduction of at least 50% of the number of cigarettes smoked, and may be increased to bring about quitting (Figure 16).

Figure 15: Reduction of smoking strategy



4.2.1.6 Clinical use

Nicotine substitutes in patch

The patch was developed to avoid the difficulties associated with the use of gum. It also has the advantage of providing more stable nicotine concentrations, more favourable to smoking cessation, but less favourable than oral forms to meet urgent nicotine needs.

The nicotine contained in the patch will gradually be administered via the skin and subcutaneous tissue, migrating from the skin to the blood and brain. Even when the nicotine patch is removed, it continues to spread from skin to brain.

The patch allows for good compliance due to the ease of use.
To reduce the risk of local skin reaction, the user must change the patch application site daily, alternating arms, shoulders, and chest.

There are patches to be worn for 24 hours to deliver a maximum dose of 21 mg of nicotine per day and systems that can be worn for 16 hours which deliver a maximum dose of 25 mg of nicotine. So the 21 mg/24h systems deliver approximately 0.9 mg of nicotine per hour, while the 25 mg/16h systems deliver 1.4 mg/h (Table 6).

Table 6: Equivalence of nicotine delivered patches at 16 and 24 hours.

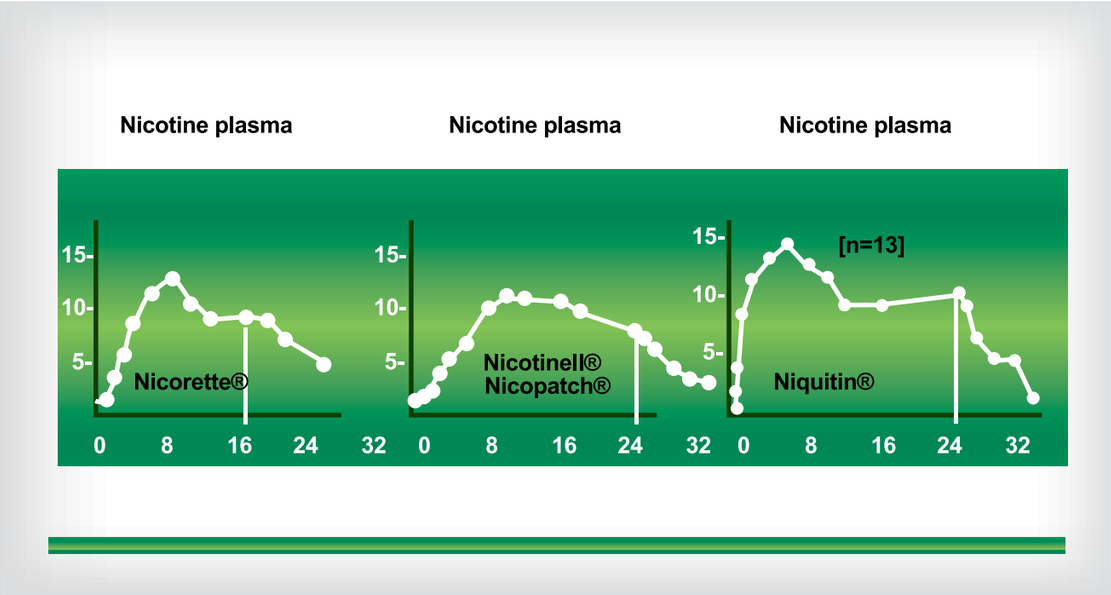
	0.3 mg/h	0.6 mg/h	0.9 mg/h	1,6 mg/h
16 hours	5mg	10 mg	15 mg	25 mg
24 hours	7 mg	14 mg	21 mg	

Different patches

Patches are all based on the same principle, but have small kinetic differences (Figure 17).

Each form of patch thus has small advantages and disadvantages. It is possible to adjust the treatment for each patient.

Figure 16: Kinetics of nicotine over 24 hours according to patch used (according to Benowitz 1993)[9]



How to apply patches

The patch is applied in the morning before or after showering (being careful not to use surface-active agents that decrease nicotine absorption. The user should avoid sticking patches in places of high pressure. If the patch becomes detached in the course of the day, it is possible to re-use the same patch using e.g. a sticking plaster.

General tolerance of patches

Like all nicotine replacement products, tolerance of patches is much better among highly dependent smokers who usually have no side effects even with multiple patches, while in a non-smoker one patch may produce almost constant side effects. These side effects are dose-related to nicotine and are strongly linked to withdrawal symptoms.

One side effect specific to the patch is skin allergy: a red skin reaction to the patch is common, often reflecting irritation. But a larger allergic reaction is possible in some patients allergic to adhesive patches. Doctors must inquire of any possible allergies to sticking plasters. If symptoms are moderate, it is possible to change the brand of patch, as different patches use different adhesives.

If a skin reaction occurs after the patch is applied, remove the patch and abandon use, except in very specific situations.

Oral nicotine replacement

Many forms of oral nicotine replacement therapy are on the market.

There are four oral forms:
- chewing gum,
- sublingual tablets to be placed under the tongue,
- lozenges, which are the most recent addition,
- inhalers, which look like cigarette holders containing nicotine for slow oral absorption.

All of these nicotine replacement products are absorbed through the oral mucosa.

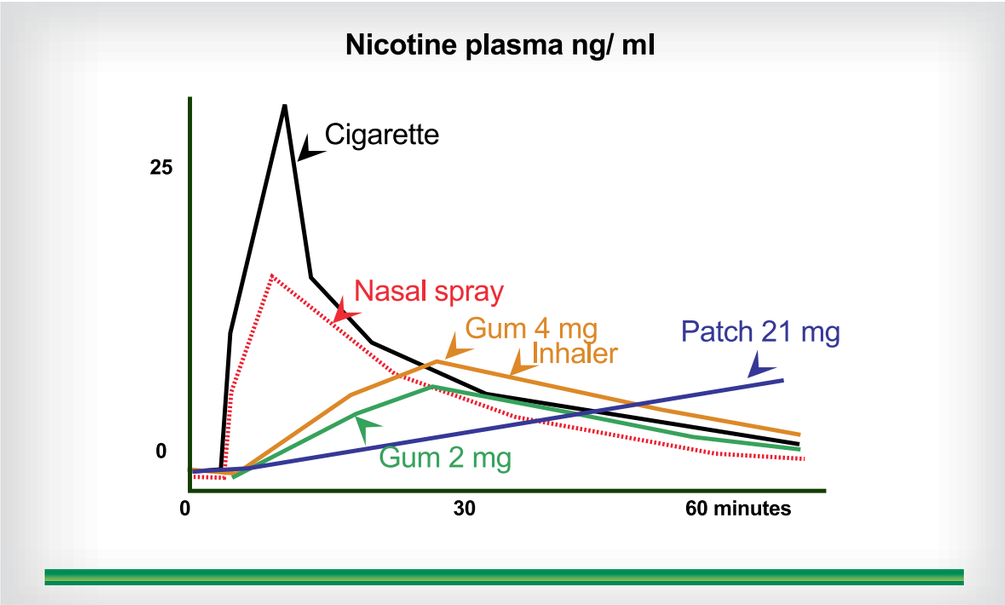
The absorption of nicotine through the oral mucosa occurs only if the mouth pH is neutral, so the user should avoid eating or drinking, especially sodas (which are acidic) 30 minutes before taking an oral form of nicotine replacement therapy.

The amount of saliva absorbed in the stomach has to be minimized as much as possible because it may cause irritation and hiccoughs. Increased salivation and swallowing of saliva is particularly important with chewing gum used by smokers who have not used chewing gum before and chew too quickly.

Bioavailability of oral nicotine

Nicotine is absorbed through the lining of the mouth when chewing begins, throughout the duration of chewing and after a few minutes or for 15 to 30 minutes (Fig. 18).

Figure 17: Kinetics of nicotine in arterial blood after taking a cigarette or different nicotine substitutes



So the progressive rise in arterial blood nicotine is much less abrupt than with cigarettes or nasal spray, thus explaining why it is preferable to maintain a certain level of nicotine concentrations with sustained dosages, so that if a sudden lack occurs, taking an oral form only has to provide additional adjustment for serum as minimal as possible. At the peak nicotine concentrations produced by gum, it is possible for a few minutes beyond the level of nicotine necessary to satisfy the receptors, which can cause a desensitization of these receptors and the awakening of new receptors that may persist in time explaining that some patients find it difficult to stop gum six months or a year or more after quitting. It is totally incorrect to maintain that gum makes them addicted to nicotine. They had been addicted to cigarettes, but it is true to say that oral intake of nicotine contributes to the maintenance of nicotine dependency in this case. Such a phenomenon does not exist, e.g. with patches that produce the least steep pharmacokinetic curve of nicotine, most likely to regress to dependence, but at the cost of occurrence of cravings at certain times of the day.

All nicotine contained in gum is not delivered to the mouth, and 2 mg of gum does not deliver 2 mg of nicotine to the oral mucosa and blood, but rather less than 1.5 mg, with variations from one brand to another (all forms are 1.5 mg to 2 mg gum quasi bioequivalent to 2 mg). The individual variations depend greatly on how the gum is chewed. Kinetic variations from one subject to another and from one outlet to another are generally greater in the case of patches as compared to oral forms, but are much less significant than in the case of cigarettes. Even smoking from one moment of the day to another can result in doses ranging from 1 to 5 of nicotine in the same cigarette.

These kinetic changes are not so significant in practice because the dose of oral forms is determined by the patient taking the amount needed to make cravings disappear.

In any case it is clear to the patient that the gum should not be used as chewing gum, but, conversely, chewed slowly, and that saliva should not be swallowed.

Gum available

Chewing gum exists in dosages of 2 mg to 4 mg. The 2 mg gum is available to low and medium-dependent smokers, the 4 mg to highly dependent smokers with a score of 7 or more). Gum is either natural taste is flavoured with mint, cinnamon, orange or fruit flavour.

Taking gum

Chewing gum requires a good technique in order to be effective and to avoid cause side effects: pain in the mouth, jaws, stomach pain or hiccoughs. Gum taken orally is chewed once or twice, then left against the cheek for 3 minutes, and then chewed once a minute for twenty minutes. Once completed, the gum must be disposed of out of the reach of children because like cigarettes it is a nicotine containing product.

Sublingual tablets

These 2 mg tablets are small uncoated tablets that must be placed under the tongue. They may cause a stinging sensation, but have no taste. As there is no need to chew or suck the tablets, excessive drooling is avoided (which may cause hiccoughs). They melt in the mouth in 15-30 minutes.

Lozenges

Lozenges are available in dosages of 1 to 4 mg and oral absorption is better than gum. Administration of lozenges is simple, as they are film-coated. They are sucked slowly without chewing.

Inhalers

An inhaler consists of a white plastic tube resembling a cigarette holder that opens up to contain a nicotine cartridge. As you inhale, as the smoker does with a cigarette, a small amount of nicotine is projected onto the oral mucosa where it is absorbed. The cartridges contain 10 mg of nicotine. Some heavy smokers consume the cartridge within an hour; others can keep the same inhaler all day and not finish the cartridge by the evening. This form of substitution maintains the gesture of smoking cigarettes and taking nicotine.

Nasal spray

Nasal sprays sold by prescription are available in some countries. These nasal sprays have the advantage of being very effective in suppressing withdrawal symptoms. They have two major drawbacks: the first is that they cause nasal irritation (sometimes major), the second is that they administer nicotine to the brain abruptly, almost as fast as cigarettes, which explains persistent addiction to this product outside of smoking cessation.

4.2.1.7 Prescribing instructions

Choose the initial dose of nicotine replacement therapy

The initial dose of nicotine replacement products can be easily determined by the amount smoked per day, and time to first cigarette (Figure 18). The least dependent does not require drug treatment, the most dependent may require two patches associated with oral forms.

Figure 18: Proposed initial doses of nicotine replacement therapy for stopping (source: INPES, France)

Smoke	<10 cig/d	10-19 cig/d	20-30 cig/d	>30 cig/d
not every day	no medication or oral NRT	no medication or oral NRT		
no in the morning	no medication or oral NRT	no medication or oral NRT	oral NRT	
<60 min after waking up	no medication or oral NRT	oral NRT	patch high dose (0.9 mg/h)	patch high dose (0.9 mg/h) ± oral NRT
<30 min after waking up		patch high dose (0.9 mg/h)	patch high dose (0.9 mg/h) ± oral NRT	patch high dose (0.9 mg/h) + oral NRT
<5 min after waking up		patch high dose (0.9 mg/h) ± oral NRT	patch high dose (0.9 mg/h) + oral NRT	2 patches (high+mean dose =1.6 mg/h) ± oral NRT

Of course nicotine concentrations, urinary cotinine or expired CO levels may sometimes contribute to a finer adjustment of the dosage, but this table suggests a dose which is frequently close to the final dose.

Association of nicotinic substitutes

When quitting, the key is to replace nicotine to a level close to what was taken with the cigarette (80-90%). This quantity is difficult to determine a priori, because, with a cigarette, some smokers are 10 times more nicotine-dependent than others.
The amount of nicotine provided by the strongest patch is, for many smokers, similar to that provided by a pack of cigarettes, but for some rare smokers, it will be too much nicotine, for others it will not be sufficient.

When a high dose of nicotine is needed, the most frequently recommended method is a combination of patches and oral forms or using more than one patch.

It is possible to associate a patch to oral forms in a staggered administration to alleviate cravings that may persist, as is done to relieve severe pain of cancer patients, who are administered morphine long term allowing patients the opportunity to make cross-doses to relieve persistent pain. As long as one has a craving, there is no danger in associating patches and oral forms. Mixed nicotine replacement is less dangerous than mixing cigarettes and cigars.

Dose adjustment after 24-72 hours

The availability of variable doses of oral substitution allows immediate adaptation doses of nicotine, but smokers are usually hesitant and afraid of nicotine medication as for years they take higher doses of nicotine in the form of smoked tobacco. Smokers, however, often experience for several decades titration of nicotine concentrations by modulating the number of cigarettes smoked and the intensity of consumption to adapt nicotine concentrations to satisfy their nicotine receptors.

We must quickly identify signs of overdose (rare) and signs of underdose (frequent).

Signs of overdose

There is no nicotine overdose when craving persists. In a patient with no desire to smoke, overdose results in the impression of having smoked too much, with nausea, tachycardia. These signs are transient and quickly stop at the end of treatment for a few hours and resume treatment at a reduced dose.

Signs of underdose
Smokers with nicotine underdosage demonstrate:
- cravings,
- extreme nervousness to their surroundings,
- food cravings that drive them to snack,
- trouble sleeping (but not specific)[10]
- and often continue to smoke a few cigarettes.

It is often useful to guide smokers in regular dosage adjustments:
- or by supplying information so that they can adapt dosage themselves in most cases,
- by asking them to call 24-72 hours,

- by advising them to call quitlines or other tobacco cessation support who can help adjust the dose and provide more advice.

If the patient takes more than 8-10 oral forms or more cigarettes per day in a patch, it is better apply a second patch to ensure a steady supply of nicotine.

4.2.1.8 Contra-indications

There are no contra-indication for nicotine replacement except in case of allergy (rare for patch users, exceptional for oral form users). In some countries pregnancy is considered to be a contra-indication. Of course, nicotine replacement therapy is not indicated for non-smokers. Precautions should be taken in the case of children under 18 or 15 years, recent severe cardiac events, and pregnancy. These precautions must be weighed according to the particularly high risk of smoking in these conditions (50% of tobacco users are killed by a tobacco-related disease).

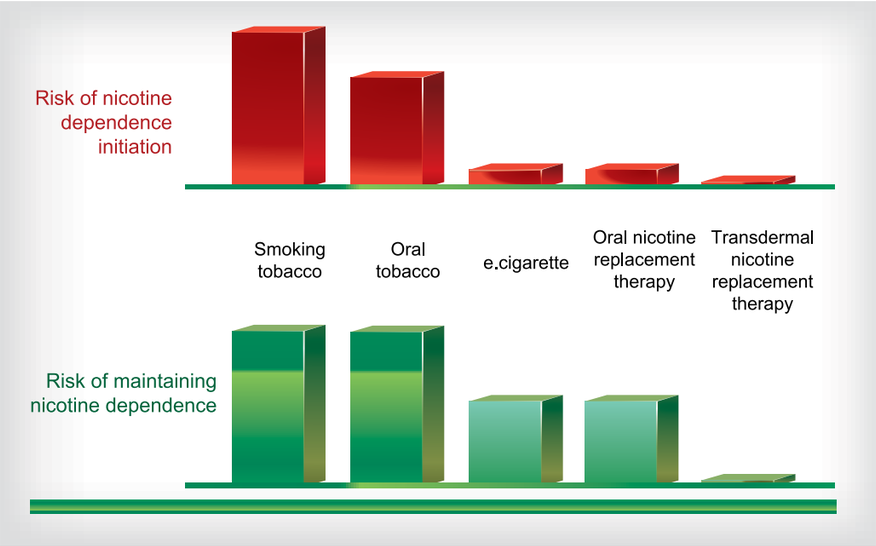
4.2.1.9 Adverse effects, precautions, warnings, drug interactions

The risks of nicotine medications are similar as those of nicotine in tobacco. There is no added risk due to partial or total replacement of nicotine provided by tobacco compared to that provided by substitutes. The intake of nicotine medications removes hundreds toxins contained in the smoke and constitutes an overall health benefit compared to tobacco use. The reduction of inflammation induced by tobacco cessation leads to changes in the kinetics of certain medications and it is recommend to re-evaluate treatment with theophylline, warfarin etc.

Risk of dependence on oral substitutes

There is a risk to maintain nicotine addiction using oral nicotine replacement. This health risk is considerably lower with NRT than smoking tobacco. This is not a risk of initiation of nicotine addiction, but rather a risk of maintaining this dependency on oral forms of NRT. With oral NRT forms there could be a small overflow level of nicotine in the brain which may lead to persistence of addiction in some smokers after smoking cessation. The risk of addiction is highest with tobacco, much lower with oral tobacco, lower with the electronic cigarette, even lower with oral nicotine replacement therapy and virtually absent with nicotine patches (Figure 19).

Figure 19: Estimated risk of initiation of addiction and maintaining dependency as per nicotine product



In subjects who use gum chronically, there is no major medical problem that the patient remains under this treatment for months or even years. After a while consumers' gums often could no longer take gum and patients say they have "had enough".

You can help by checking the timing of gum consumption: if gum is taken instead to manage emotions in a systematic way to fill a permanent deficiency. In some cases, if patches are replaced by oral substitutes they could eliminate nicotine peaks in the blood and allow complete nicotine withdrawal.

Risks of nicotine replacement therapy

Nicotine replacement therapy may have side effects, such as allergic or no allergic reactions. These phenomena are usually benign. It is sometimes difficult to know, in the side effects observed, what is related to the change in smoking status, the change of lifestyle and what is due to the drug.

In case of allergy, it is always possible to be allergic to the nicotine replacement itself, but this risk is quite exceptional and is more theoretical than practical, however allergies do exist in relation to the patches, specifically the adhesives used. The appropriate response to such complaints depends on the severity and extent of reactions.

Other side effects (cf. Table 7) are generally moderate and are not comparable with the consequences of smoking. This is why such medication is generally available without prescription, and in some countries, e.g. USA, low-dose oral forms are available in supermarkets.

Table 7: Side effects of nicotine

Common side effects (more than one person in 100):
• headaches, • dizziness, • hiccoughs, • sore throat, • irritation or dryness of the mouth, • nausea, vomiting, digestive disorders.
Uncommon (more than one person in 1000):
• palpitations.
Rare side effects (more than one person in 10,000):
• occurrence of cardiac arrhythmia.

It is always safer to take nicotine replacement therapy that tobacco.

Adverse effects of treatment as compared to tobacco cessation related symptoms

Patients often interpret as side effects of treatment effects that are actually related smoking cessation. The withdrawal effects most often attributed to treatment are the depressive syndrome and sleep disruption.

• Depression is the leading risk of smoking cessation using nicotine replacement therapy (or other treatment); it is not related to the product, but rather to quitting smoking, which may stimulate latent depression. If a patient feels depressed in idle state or has a history of depression, we must examine this with particular care during patient assessment in order to prevent a relapse of depression.

• Sleep disruption and changes in sleep quality is encountered by the majority of smokers who quit smoking. These changes have varying degrees of severity. They require a minimum of analysis. The occurrence of nightmares should be an immediate alert of possible depression, other disorders may be ascertained over a longer period (and these often disappear spontaneously).

Recommendations

• Nicotine replacement therapy is recommended as an efficient smoking cessation pharmacotherapy (level of evidence A).

• A combination of oral form and patch delivered at a dosage close to that of cigarettes increases the success rate (level of evidence A).

4.2.2 Treatment with bupropion SR

The first medicine in the series of non-nicotine therapies that proved efficient in treating nicotine dependence, bupropion SR, has been known worldwide since 1997 and in Europe since 2000. It is available only on medical prescription. This medication was used for a long time in USA for patients with schizophrenia and other illnesses. Because many patients receiving this medication quit smoking unintentionally, Linda Ferry, who was a doctor treating these patients, started to examine the efficacy of this drug in smoking cessation. A long release formulation has been studied and marketed. Because bupropion has been used as an anti-depressant in the USA since 1989[11]; its adverse pharmacological profile is very well documented with data concerning the product's safety[12]. As with any other anti-depressant, the common side effects are dry mouth, insomnia and headaches. Potential users of this medicine must be informed about its side effects[13].

Mechanism of action

Bupropion blocks the neuronal release of dopamine and noradrenaline and, possibly, the action of inhibiting the function of anticholinergic nicotine receptors, proved in vitro[14]. It mimics the effect of cigarette-derived nicotine by inhibiting the re-uptake of noradrenaline and dopamine and is thought to reduce nicotine withdrawal also by this mechanism. It seems that bupropion's efficacy for nicotine dependence is a property separate from its anti-depressant action, since its positive smoking cessation action has also been proven on non-depressive patients[13].

Bupropion acts by removing some of the nicotine abstinence symptoms, i.e. in particular depression, by reducing the severity of the withdrawal syndrome globally, which makes it recommendable as an efficient aid in the smoking cessation process. Bupropion helps patients by decreasing the appetite for smoking. Administering bupropion to smokers with severe nicotine dependence considerably reduces the depression symptoms associated with withdrawal. Bupropion doubles the abstinence ratio compared to placebos and has similar effects on both sexes[13].

A recently published genetic analysis of the response to bupropion suggests that the success of smoking cessation using this drug is determined in part by variation in CYP2B6, the gene encoding the primary enzyme responsible for the metabolism of bupropion (Faucette et al, 2000), rather than by genetic variation in nicotinic cholinergic receptor pathways[15].

Clinical evidence for the efficacy of bupropion

Overview of the data published in the field showed 40 randomized studies which support the efficacy of bupropion in treating nicotine dependence and concluded that bupropion doubles the long-term

successful abstinence ratio compared to placebos (31 of the studies in which bupropion was the only therapy against smoking found an odds ratio OR of 1.94; 95%, CI 1.72–2.19)[14]. The efficacy of the drug has been repeatedly studied and evaluated in meta-analyses. The superior effectiveness of bupropion therapy over placebo has been documented[6]. In a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, 27% of the patients treated with bupropion were found abstinent after six months, compared to 16% who received placebos[16]. The long-term abstinence ratio in patients treated with bupropion was also double when it was accompanied by behavioural therapy, compared to placebo[17]. Data exists about bupropion's efficacy in smoking cessation in the sub-group of smokers with the genotype DRD2 Taq1 A2/A2 of D2 gene of the dopamine receptor: at the end of treatment, the abstinence ratio was three times higher in those who received bupropion compared to placebo[10].

Bupropion SR has also been shown to decrease craving and attenuate post-cessation weight gain among smokeless tobacco users trying to quit[19].

In a randomized, double-blind placebo-controlled trial to evaluate whether bupropion SR was effective for smoking cessation among African-American light smokers (≤ 10 cigarettes/day), bupropion SR was found effective in promoting smoking cessation during the medication phase of treatment, but no statistically significant difference in long-term smoking abstinence rates at week 26 was observed between the bupropion SR and the placebo groups[20].

In clinical practice according to available Romanian data published so far, the six-month abstinence ratio due to bupropion SR was appreciated at 28%[21].

Indications

Bupropion is a first-line pharmacotherapy that has proven efficient in treating tobacco use and dependence. Bupropion is recommended based solely on medical prescription to all patients motivated to stop smoking, who have no contra-indications. At the same time, it is an efficient alternative for patients who did not tolerate or have tried NRT without success, or for patients who express a preference for non-nicotine therapies.

Bupropion is recommended as an efficient smoking cessation medication, including in the following situations:

- To avoid post-abstinence weight gain: bupropion can be used on smokers concerned with putting on weight after smoking cessation. Thus, Hays et al. reported in a previous survey a better weight control associated with a higher abstinence ratio compared to placebo one year after the end of bupropion treatment course[13]
- To prevent smoking relapses (in patients who underwent a seven-week bupropion course and stopped smoking, continuing bupropion therapy up to 52 weeks delayed smoking relapse[13].
- To prevent smoking relapses in alcoholic patients during recovery.
- In patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Although Garcia Rio et al. arrived at the hypothesis that bupropion could damage the ventilator response to hypoxia and hypercapnia with a potentially harmful effect on the evolution of COPD, none of the studies which assessed the efficacy of bupropion as a smoking cessation therapy on patients with chronic pulmonary disease could show such adverse effects[22].

Clinical use

Bupropion is available in boxes of 28 tablets of 150 mg. In the first three days, patients should take a dose of 150 mg bupropion orally every morning, then 150 mg twice a day (at min. 8 hour interval) for the rest of the course, for a total duration of 7 to 9 or 12 weeks. Prolonging the duration of the initial cure results in more lasting tobacco abstinence. For long-term therapy, consider bupropion SR 150 mg for up to six months post quitting[23].

Patients should begin bupropion SR treatment 1-2 weeks before they stop smoking. They must set a quit date in the second week of treatment and may start using bupropion, although they still smoke. It is considered that after one to two weeks of treatment the serum level of Bupropion attains a constant condition and stopping smoking may be attempted. It has been proven that continuing to smoke does not significantly affect the pharmacotherapy with bupropion. According to some authors, if the patient does not succeed in stopping smoking on the date initially set, it should be recommended to delay stopping until the third or fourth week of treatment, until achieving abstinence[23].

Prescribing instructions

Stopping smoking prior to quit date: It is recognized that some patients may lose their desire to smoke before the date set for quitting, or can spontaneously reduce the amount of tobacco used.
Dosage information: If insomnia is present, taking the evening dose earlier in the afternoon may bring some relief.
Alcohol: It is recommended not to use in combination with alcohol, or at most only a minimum quantity.
If mood changes manifest themselves, consult a doctor.

Contra-indications

Contra-indications exist in the following cases:
- age under 18;
- pregnancy, breast-feeding: bupropion has not been shown to be effective for tobacco dependence treatment in pregnant smokers. (Bupropion is an FDA pregnancy class C agent.) Bupropion has not been evaluated in breast-feeding patients[13];
- hypersensitivity to bupropion or its inactive constituents;
- previous or current convulsive disorders, skull and brain tumours, medical history of seizures or conditions favouring seizure;
- eating disorders;
- bipolar disorders;
- withdrawal from chronic alcohol consumption, severe hepatic failure, hepatic cirrhosis;
- use of MAO inhibitors in the past two weeks, history of benzodiazepine use.

Adverse effects, precautions, warnings, drug interactions

Main adverse events

A review of clinical studies showed twice the adverse effects in patients receiving bupropion compared to placebo[5]. The adverse effects encountered most often in patients receiving bupropion are:
- insomnia,
- headache,
- dry mouth.

To counteract dry mouth and headaches it is recommended to gradually ingest two to three litres of liquids a day. To avoid insomnia we recommend taking the first bupropion tablet in the morning, as early as possible, so that the second tablet is taken earlier in the afternoon, preferably at least four hours before sleep. Insomnia can be reduced also by adjusting the bupropion dose to 150 mg/day.

In a more extensive study of the French experience concerning smoking cessation treatment using bupropion in 2001-2004, the authors noted 1682 adverse reactions encountered on 698,000 patients treated with bupropion in the first three years of the product being on sale in France. Of these 1682 adverse events, 28% were recorded as severe adverse reactions, with the following spectrum:

- 31.2% skin reactions (allergic, angiooedema “serum disease” type),
- 22.5% neurological reactions (especially cerebral-vascular),
- 17.2% neuropsychological reactions (especially suicidal thoughts, depression).

After careful analysis of the cases, it was proven that in 66% of neurological/psychological reactions and in almost 50% of the neurological reactions, predisposing risk factors were identified[24].

Other adverse effects

Dizziness, high blood pressure, thoracic pain, anxiety-depression syndrome, decreasing intellectual performance, visual disturbance and, rarely, seizure, even allergic skin reactions are also described as adverse effects.
The most alarming adverse effect is seizure; it occurs very rarely (1:1000) and is usually facilitated by pre-existing risk factors like brain circulation disorders, cranial-cerebral trauma, epilepsy, eating disorders, simultaneous medication which lowers the seizure threshold etc.
Rare cases of angiooedema[25], hypernatraemia, including a syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH), are reported, are not a rare complication of antipsychotic drug therapy[26].

Precautions for use

In older subjects, it is recommended to adjust (reduce) the bupropion dose by half, i.e. 150 mg bupropion/day, as well as in cases associated with severe renal or hepatic failure. Drivers and patients who handle equipment requiring vigilance are advised to check the effects of bupropion before carrying out these activities, given that they could experience dizziness, impaired concentration capacity and attention[13].

Since high blood pressure was described by patients under treatment with bupropion, careful blood pressure monitoring is required, especially when therapeutic combinations are used, like associating bupropion and nicotine patches.

All patients using bupropion as well other medication for smoking cessation must be monitored for symptoms in the following categories: behavioural disorders, hostility, agitation, bad moods, suicidal thoughts/attempts and aberrant behaviour ideation. When such manifestations occur, patients must discontinue using bupropion immediately and contact their doctor[27]. The EMEA and FDA recommend that patients should tell their health care provider about any history of psychiatric illness prior to starting this medication and those clinicians should monitor for changes in mood and behaviour when prescribing this medication. For further information, consult the FDA websites for black-box warnings [28] [29].

Before prescribing bupropion, the doctor should check the following aspects that impose certain precautions for use:
- substances that may decrease the convulsive threshold: antipsychotic medication, anti-depressants,

tramadolum, methylxantynes, systemic steroids, antihistamine, antibiotics like quinolones, psycho-stimulating or anorexic substances;
- alcoholism history;
- antecedents of diabetes mellitus or skull and brain traumas.

Increased attention is also recommended in case of simultaneous use of medicines which may interact with bupropion: caution when simultaneously using drugs that induce or inhibit the enzyme 2D6 or the P 450 structures. At the same time, it is recommended to measure blood pressure, as well as blood concentrations of theophylline, tacrine, clozapine, possibly imipramine, fluvoxamine and pentazocyne, as they may increase when used simultaneously with bupropion. Concomitant administration of bupropion also determines the increase of the blood titre of some anti-depressants (imipramine, paroxetine and desipramine), some anti-psychotic medicines (risperidone, thioridazine), metoprolol, anti-arrhythmic medication like propaphenone. Caution is also recommended when using the following medications together with bupropion: cyclophosphamide, carbamazepine, valproate, levodopa and amantadine[13].

Indications for interrupting bupropion therapy

- occurrence of convulsions;
- serum sickness symptoms: joints or muscle aches, fever;
- anaphylactic reactions or hypersensitivity: rash, skin eruptions, pains/thoracic constriction, dyspnoea, oedemas.

Cost-effectiveness of bupropion treatment

In a systematic review to compare the cost-effectiveness of first-line non-nicotine therapies (varenicline and bupropion SR) for smoking cessation, to identify differences in the models used and their conclusions of cost-effectiveness, varenicline dominated bupropion in most cost-effectiveness models. However, applicability of models to clinical practice and variables which change conclusion of cost-effectiveness should be considered in the interpretation of results[30].

Recommendation

- Bupropion SR is recommended as an efficient smoking cessation pharmacotherapy (level of evidence A) [13 23].

4.2.3. Treatment with varenicline

Varenicline, the newest smoking cessation pharmacological therapy available, started being used worldwide in 2006, with the approval of FDA. It can be obtained only on medical prescription and administration is not recommended in combination with nicotine substitutes, given its properties as an antagonist of the nicotine receptors.

4.2.3.1 Mechanism of action

The mechanism by which varenicline assists smokers in achieving abstinence must be understood within the context of the role that nicotine plays in fostering tobacco dependence. Nicotine acts on neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors (nAchR) within the ventral tegmental area of the brain, causing dopamine release in the nucleus accumbens, which reinforces nicotine-seeking behaviour. Activation of these receptors in the ventral tegmental area occurs when sufficient levels of nicotine are carried in the blood[31].

The predominant neuronal nicotinic nAchR sub-types in the central nervous system are the α4β2 and α7 varieties. Of these, the former is most prevalent in the central nervous system, accounting for approximately 90% of central nervous system neuronal nAchR. This high prevalence and the high nicotine affinity of α4β2 neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors – believed to have the highest sensitivity to nicotine [32]– suggest that the α4β2 neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor is a key bio-molecular target for both the perpetuation and treatment of nicotine addiction. The α4β2 receptor has been identified as a potential target for a smoking cessation drug, especially with a partial agonist action at this receptor sub-type[33].

Varenicline was developed to have a high affinity for α4β2 nAChR in the mesolimbic dopamine system[34] and to act as a selective partial agonist of the α4β2 nAChR[31]; also, it possesses a receptor-dependent mode of action, acting as a low-efficacy partial agonist to the α4β2, α3β2 α3β4 and α6/α3β2β3 chimerical neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor and a high-efficacy full agonist to the α7 nAchR. As a pharmacologic agent for tobacco dependence, varenicline's partial agonism of the α4β2 is thought to promote smoking abstinence through stimulation of dopaminergic neurons and consequent amelioration of tobacco cravings and nicotine withdrawal. Partial antagonism at the α4β2 neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptor inhibits nicotine binding, leading to diminished reward from smoking a cigarette.

Varenicline has been observed to diminish the desire to smoke. Compared with placebos, craving is significantly lower for participants who receive varenicline (versus placebo, P= 0.001). Consistent with

the proposed partial antagonist mechanism for varenicline, smoking satisfaction and psychological reward are also significantly decreased in smokers taking varenicline versus placebo[27].

4.2.3.2 Clinical evidence for efficacy of varenicline

Efficacy in smoker without comorbidity

In 2006, two large, identically designed, multi-centre, double-blind, phase III, randomized, controlled clinical trials provided convincing evidence of the efficacy of varenicline for the treatment of tobacco dependence. Both teams of researchers, Jorenby et al.[36] and Gonzales et al.[37], concluded that varenicline is a safe, well tolerated medication, with remarkable results regarding continuous abstinence ratio and long-term tobacco abstinence. One study[37] observed 44% continuous smoking abstinence during the last four weeks of treatment (weeks 9–12) for subjects taking 1 mg varenicline twice daily compared with 18% for placebo-treated subjects (OR 3.85, 95% CI: 2.70–5.50) and compared with 30% for sustained-release bupropion-treated (150 mg twice daily) subjects (OR 1.93, 95% CI: 1.40–2.68). At 52 weeks after randomization, varenicline significantly increased prolonged abstinence rates compared with placebo (21.9% versus 8.4%, OR 3.09, 95% CI: 1.95–4.91) and had marginal benefit compared with sustained-release bupropion (21.9% versus 16.1%, OR 1.46, 95% CI: 0.99–2.17). Findings from the second phase III trial were nearly identical[36], except that varenicline increased prolonged smoking abstinence rates significantly, compared with sustained-release bupropion at 52 weeks (OR 1.77, 95% CI: 1.19–2.63).

Varenicline has been compared with NRT in two studies. A non-randomized study compared varenicline with various NRTs in a smokers' clinic giving seven group therapy sessions in addition to drug therapy, in smokers with and without prior or current mental illnesses. The cessation rate at six weeks (the only time point reported) was higher with varenicline than that with the use of one NRT, 72% vs.61% (OR 1.7)[38]. The second study analyzed outcomes of randomized and treated participants in an open-label comparison of varenicline 1 mg bid (N = 376) with NRT, a 21 mg transdermal patch, (N = 370). Doses of NRT were 21 mg/day for the first 6 weeks, 14 mg/day for 2 weeks, and 7 mg/day for 2 weeks. The continuous abstinence rate for the last four weeks of the 12 weeks of varenicline standard regimen treatment was significantly greater than the continuous abstinence rate for the last four weeks of the standard regimen transdermal nicotine treatment, 56% and 43%, respectively (OR 1.70; $p \leq 0.001$)[39]. In a randomized controlled trial of varenicline v. nicotine patch in 32 adult smokers (16 VG v. 16 NG) for comparison of efficacy, safety and withdrawal symptoms, no significant difference in abstinence rates was observed between the two groups over weeks 9–12 (71.4% v. 78.6% in the VG and NG, respectively), and weeks 9–24 (64.3% v. 71.4%, respectively). The frequencies of inability to concentrate at 2, 4 and 8 weeks, and wakeful nights at 2 weeks were higher in the VG than in the NG. Adverse side effects associated with a gastrointestinal disorder occurred in 14 cases and 1 case in the

VG and NG, respectively, and skin allergy was seen in 0 and 9 cases, respectively[40].
A meta-analysis compiled the data from six clinical trials including 2583 participants receiving either varenicline or placebo. The analysis yielded a risk ratio (RR) for continuous smoking abstinence over weeks 9–24 of 2.34 (95% CI: 1.99–2.75) in favour of varenicline 1.0 mg twice daily. The meta-analysis also reported on three studies that compared varenicline with sustained-release bupropion. Varenicline was observed to be superior to bupropion (RR 1.52, 95% CI: 1.22–1.88) for continuous abstinence at week 52[41]. In a pooled data analysis of phase III trials by Gonzales et al. and Jorenby et al. to explore the relative efficacy of varenicline, bupropion and placebo for smoking cessation, Nides et al. found that pooled continuous abstinence rates for weeks 9 through 12 were significantly greater for varenicline compared with bupropion and placebo (44.0%, 29.7%, and 17.7%, respectively; both comparisons P = 0.001)[34]. In similar analysis to evaluate the effects of varenicline, bupropion and placebo on craving and withdrawal symptoms among smokers, West et al. found that among all participants, cravings were significantly reduced with varenicline or bupropion compared with placebo (both P = 0.001) and with varenicline compared with bupropion (P = 0.008); that varenicline or bupropion significantly inhibited negative withdrawal syndrome compared with placebo and also that varenicline-treated patients had significantly lower pleasurable effects of smoking compared with those treated with bupropion[43]. Taken together, all these clinical data prove that varenicline is superior to placebo, and suggest that varenicline is more effective than NRT and bupropion for achieving abstinence from smoking in the short-term. Varenicline not only significantly attenuates the craving and withdrawal symptoms, but also significantly reduces the rewarding effect of nicotine and delays relapse to smoking[44].

Efficacy of prolonged treatment

Longer durations of therapy using varenicline have been shown to be more effective than shorter durations on 6-12 months abstinence. In a study evaluating longer duration of therapy, participants achieving smoking abstinence at the end of treatment after 12 weeks, with open-label varenicline, were randomized to either varenicline 1 mg twice daily or placebo for an additional 12 weeks. At the end of the second treatment phase (week 24 of the study), 71% of participants receiving active treatment remained abstinent from smoking compared with 50% of participants receiving placebo (OR 2.48, 95% CI: 1.95–3.16). At 52 weeks follow-up, subjects receiving varenicline had significantly higher smoking abstinence rates compared with those receiving placebo (44% versus 37% continuous abstinence over weeks 13–52, OR 1.34, 95% CI: 1.06–1.69)[45]. A secondary analysis of the data from this study suggests that, when used for relapse prevention, the additional 12-week course of varenicline is more effective in smokers who initially had difficulty in achieving smoking abstinence[38]. There is also scientific evidence that varenicline is well tolerated over the long term – over three to six months, up to one year – and that prolonging the treatment duration prevents relapses[13]. The safety and efficacy of long-term treatment (six months) with varenicline has been also demonstrated. In a study on 377

adult smokers, participants were randomized to either varenicline (1 mg twice daily) or placebo for 52 weeks. The drug was well tolerated. The seven-day point prevalence abstinence rate at week 52 was 37% for varenicline-treated subjects v. 8% for the placebo group[47].

Another study assessed to what degree smokers who fail to quit on the target quit date (TQD) or lapse following TQD, eventually achieve success with continued treatment. This was done by a secondary analysis of pooled data from two identical varenicline v. bupropion and placebo trials. Two successful quitting patterns were identified among smokers who achieved continuous abstinence for the last four weeks of treatment (weeks 9-12): immediate quitters (IQs) who quit on the TQD (day 8) and remained continuously abstinent for weeks 2-12 and delayed quitters (DQs) who achieved initial abstinence sometime after the TQD or may have lapsed following abstinence at week 2 and recovered by week 9 of the trial. Compared to IQs, the DQs were 'delayed' in achieving continuous abstinence to the end of treatment. These data favour recommending continuing cessation treatments without interruption for smokers motivated to remain in the quitting process despite lack of success early in treatment[40].

Efficacy in patients with COPD

Finally, according to Tashkin et al., varenicline was also proven as an efficient pharmacological therapy, well tolerated in patients with mild-moderate forms of COPD, with a continuous abstinence ratio in weeks 9-12 of 42.3% v. 8.8% placebo and up to 18.6% v. 5.6% for placebo in follow-up (weeks 9-52). A good safety profile was found, compared to the previously known studies on varenicline (2.8% severe adverse effects in those who received varenicline compared to 4.4% in the placebo group)[49].

Efficacy in patients with heart disease

In 2010 Rigotti et al. published their results on efficacy and safety of varenicline v. placebo in 714 smokers with stable cardio-vascular diseases[50]. The authors found a continuous abstinence rate higher with varenicline (47.0% versus 13.9%) in weeks 9-12, as in weeks 9-52 (19.2% v. 7.2%).

Efficacy in HIV patients

In a multi-centre pilot open label study in HIV-infected smokers, varenicline 1.0 mg was used twice daily for 12 weeks with dose titration in the first week. Adverse events (AE) and abstinence rates were comparable to those in published randomized controlled trials conducted in generally healthy HIV-negative smokers. Varenicline was safe and appears effective among HIV-infected smokers in this exploratory study, although AEs (especially nausea) were common. Close monitoring of liver enzymes and blood pressure is recommended for HIV-positive smokers taking varenicline[51].

Efficacy in patients with psychiatric disorders

New data came from a study to compare treatment outcomes across smokers enrolled in the COMPASS cessation trial: psychiatric history (PH+) smokers were more likely to report anxiety and depression, but psychiatric side effect intensity ratings did not differ after adjusting for multiple comparisons. Overall, all side effects were rated as moderate intensity or less. In this study, patients received behavioural counselling plus varenicline with six months post-quit date follow-up and were assigned as with v. without a diagnosis of psychiatric history, based on medical record evidence of anxiety, depression, psychotic or bipolar disorder. Overall, having a psychiatric diagnosis in this trial did not predict a worse treatment outcome or worse treatment side effects[52].

Efficacy to quit smokeless tobacco

Efficacy and safety of varenicline in helping users of smokeless tobacco (ST) to quit was assessed in 431 participants (213 varenicline; 218 placebo), as randomized and received at least one dose of the study drug. Continuous abstinence rate at weeks 9-12 was higher in the varenicline group than in the placebo group (59% v. 39%). The advantage of varenicline over placebo persisted through 14 weeks of follow-up (continuous abstinence rate at weeks 9-26 was 45% v. 34%). The authors concluded that varenicline can help people to give up smokeless tobacco and has an acceptable safety profile. The response rate in the placebo group in this study was high, suggesting a population less resistant to treatment than smokers[53]. In a pilot study to obtain preliminary data on the use of varenicline as a tobacco reduction strategy in an open-label study enrolling 20 ST users, Ebbert et al. report that varenicline may be effective in reducing ST use and achieving ST abstinence among ST users with no plans to quit but who are interested in reducing their ST use[54].

4.2.3.3 Varenicline in combination pharmacotherapy

An open-label pilot study in smokers investigated 12 weeks of therapy with varenicline (standard treatment regimen) co-administered with sustained-release bupropion (150 mg twice daily after a three-day dose escalation). The seven-day point prevalence smoking abstinence rate among 38 enrolled smokers was 71% at the end of treatment. At six months, combination therapy continued to appear more effective than monotherapy, although an appropriately powered, double-blind, randomized, controlled trial is necessary to confirm these findings.

Heavier smokers might benefit from combination therapy with varenicline and nicotine replacement therapy because varenicline might not fully saturate nicotinic receptors during dose escalation. Incompletely saturated receptors may lead to partial attenuation of nicotine cravings. If supplemental nicotine replacement therapy can lead to more complete receptor saturation, then urges to smoke

could be more completely attenuated[15]. This possible effect was evaluated in an eight-day residential treatment programme. The first study group (n = 135) completed the residential treatment programme prior to the release of varenicline and received "usual care" consisting of nicotine patch therapy and/or sustained-release bupropion. Short-acting forms of NRT were used ad libitum for treating acute nicotine withdrawal symptoms. The second group (n = 104) completed the residential treatment programme after FDA approval of varenicline and received combination therapy with varenicline and nicotine replacement therapy. Nicotine patch therapy was the predominant form of NRT used, and it was often supplemented with short-acting forms of NRT. Nearly three-quarters of patients used more than one form of NRT. No significant differences were observed in the 30-day point prevalence smoking abstinence rates between the two groups at six months. Importantly, no increase in reported side effects in patients receiving the combination treatment was observed. Major limitations to this study were the small sample size and the uncontrolled study design[55].

4.2.3.4 Varenicline and counselling

Data sustain the effectiveness of varenicline when paired with various behavioural treatment programmes as offered in a real-world setting. The extent to which varenicline is effective in association with proactive telephone counselling, delivery of health information and behavioural counselling via web-based platforms, or combination of both, was explored by Swan et al. The authors concluded that telephone counselling had greater treatment advantage for early cessation and appeared to increase medication adherence, but the absence of differences at six months suggests that any of the interventions hold promise when used in conjunction with varenicline[56].

4.2.3.5 Indications

Varenicline is the first medication especially developed as exclusively destined for smoking cessation[14]. It is available only by medical prescription and is a first-line medication to treat nicotine dependence.

4.2.3.6 Clinical use

Varenicline is administered orally, regardless of food ingestion (it can be administered before and after meals) in two stages[57.]

The initial phase: boxes with tablets dosed for the first two weeks, prescribed as: 1 tablet 0.5 mg/day, in days 1-3 of treatment, then 1 tablet of 0.5 mg x 2/day in days 47 and 1 tablet of 1 mg x 2/day in days 8-14.
The continuation phase: boxes of 28 tablets of 1 mg; it is recommended to take 1 tablet of 1 mg x 2/day, on a daily basis, between weeks 3-12.

The patient starts varenicline, then, during the first weeks of treatment, preferably between days 8 and 14, sets a date when he/she will make a quit attempt. If the smoking cessation attempt does not succeed, the course continues and the patient tries to stop on another day, until he/she is successful.

Contraindications of varenicline are few, namely: hypersensitivity to the active substance or its inactive components; age under 18; pregnancy and breast-feeding.

4.2.3.7 Precautions imposed by varenicline therapy

Patients with renal failure

For patients with renal failure, the dose is adjusted as follows: in mild forms (creatinine clearance 50-80 ml/min.) – the dose is the usual one; in moderate forms (creatinine clearance 30-50 ml/min.) – the dose is the usual one or up to 1 mg/day; in severe forms (creatinine clearance ≤ 30 ml/min.) – the maximum recommended dose is 1 mg/day[13].

Vehicle drivers and heavy machinery operators

Due to US FDA reports in 2007, some safety concerns were formulated relating to varenicline use among operators of vehicles and heavy machinery, as well as in any setting in which alertness and motor control are required to avoid serious injury. In May 2008, the US Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration and Federal Aviation Administration announced that pilots, air-traffic controllers, and truck and bus drivers were barred from taking this drug[44]. So, it is cautious to ask drivers if their current activity is influenced by the use of varenicline. Varenicline can have a minor, medium or significant influence on the capacity to drive vehicles or to use equipment (dizziness and somnolence). Patients must be advised not to drive, handle equipment or get involved in potentially risky activities until it is known for sure if this medicine does affect their capacity to perform such activities safely[13 14].

Patients with mental illnesses

Based on several reports, in November 2007 the FDA issued an early alert about the safety of varenicline, emphasizing the need to screen pre-existing psychiatric illness before using varenicline and the importance of monitoring mood or behaviour changes. In May 2008, the FDA updated the warning by requiring that all patients should be observed and report to their physicians immediately in case of any mood or behaviour changes, or worsening of pre-existing psychiatric illness, during or upon discontinuation of varenicline therapy. This safety concern was further emphasized in more recent clinical reports: about 5% of patients in UK (from a total of 2682 patients since December 2006) reported psychiatric effects during treatment with varenicline, including sleep disorders (1.6%),

anxiety (1.2%), depression (1.0%), abnormal dreams (1.0%), mood change (0.6%), and suicidal events (n = 5)[44 58].

4.2.3.8 Tolerability and safety

Varenicline is generally well tolerated. The most commonly reported adverse effects, when compared to bupropion or placebo, are reported in Table 8[59].

Table 8: Comparison of undesirable effects using varenicline, bupropion and placebo

	Varenicline	Bupropion	Placebo
Nausea	28%	9%	9%
Insomnia	14%	21%	13%
Headache	14%	11%	12%

Nausea

Nausea was the most frequently reported symptom as a mild to moderate adverse event (overall incidence 24.4%-52.0%) that occurred at a higher rate in varenicline groups than in placebo groups. Most episodes of nausea began in the first week of treatment and lasted for a median duration of 12 days. Dose titration appeared to reduce the overall incidence of nausea. There was a low incidence of nausea (13.4%) in varenicline treated patients in the self-regulated flexible dosing study. In clinical trials, rates of treatment discontinuation due to nausea were generally 5% in varenicline-treated patients. In case this adverse effect does occur, the following practical information is useful for the patient to know: in general the phenomenon decreases by itself in about one week after the start of therapy; it can be avoided by administering the drug together with food and if the patient rests a little after taking it[14].

Insomnia

Use of varenicline at the maintenance dose of 1 mg twice a day for longer than 6 weeks is associated with adverse gastrointestinal effects. In realistic terms, for every five treated subjects, there will be an event of nausea, and for every 24 and 35 treated subjects, we will expect an event of constipation and flatulence respectively[60].

Apart from events in the sleep disturbances category, no cause-effect type response was shown in these physical changes. As a conclusion, Tonstad et al. declared that there was no significant increase of the psychiatric event ratio, others than those related to sleep disorders, in this group of smokers under varenicline, having no previously known psychiatric disorders.

Insomnia was another commonly reported adverse effect (14.0%-37.2%) associated with varenicline in clinical trials. In general, insomnia occurred during the first four weeks of treatment with varenicline and became less common as treatment continued. In one extended treatment study, the incidence of insomnia was 19.1% with varenicline and 9.5% with placebo, suggesting that insomnia may be a common symptom of nicotine withdrawal during smoking-cessation attempts[44].

Cardiovascular

A review of randomized studies published between 2008 and 2010 resulted in new safety data concerning the use of varenicline in patients with respiratory and cardiovascular comorbidities, as well as possible adverse psychiatric events.

There were no significant differences between the varenicline group and the placebo group regarding: cardiovascular mortality (0.3% v. 0.6%), mortality due to all causes (0.6% v. 1.4%), cardiovascular events (7.1% v. 5.7%) and all severe adverse events (6.5% v. 6.0%) (Table 9).

Table 9: Comparison of death and cardiovascular side effects among patients of the Rigotti study with previous cardiovascular study

Patients with previous cardiac disease	Varenicline	Placebo
Cardiovascular death	0.3%	0.6%
All mortalities	0.6%	1.4%
Cardiovascular event	7.1%	5.7%
All severe adverse events	6.5%	6.0%

A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) to ascertain the serious adverse cardiovascular events of varenicline compared with placebo among tobacco users was conducted by Singh et al. using available data. Most of the powerful findings come from the Rigotti study, because many studies do not show a single cardiovascular adverse event. The authors raised certain safety concerns with varenicline use, compared with placebo (OR 1.72, 95% CI 1.09–2.71; I2 = 0%). Despite the limitations of these findings, potential regulatory and clinical implications must be viewed and until other safety trials are performed, clinicians should carefully consider the risk of serious cardiovascular events associated with varenicline use, against the known cessation benefits of the drug[61]. Another metanalysis with mostly identical data shows no significant risk. The EMEA reviews all these data and concludes that the benefit of using varenicline for smoking cessation remains high and does not limit use of the medication.

Psychiatric disorders

A publication in 2010 reviewed the incidence and relative risk of psychological disorders recorded in ten randomized, placebo-controlled studies about varenicline for smoking cessation[62]. Other psychological disorders than simple sleep disturbances were found in 10.7% of the subjects treated with varenicline v. 9.7% in those who received placebo, with a relative risk of 1.02. The relative risk v. placebo of adverse psychiatric events at an incidence ≥ 1 in the varenicline group was: 0.86 for anxiety symptoms, 0.76 for physical activity changes, and 1.42 for changed mood, 1.21 for uncategorized mood disturbances and 1.70 for sleep disturbances. There were no reports of cases of suicidal behaviour

or pathological ideation in subjects under varenicline therapy in these ten randomized trials, but three other trials not included in this review, because of their different design, reported two cases of suicidal thoughts and one single case of suicide.

Other adverse events

Other adverse effects were also reported, such as: abdominal pain, constipation, bloating and abnormal dreams, sleep disturbance, dizziness, dry mouth, increased appetite, weight gain, and headache which generally occurred at rates twice those with placebo[63]. These adverse events were mild to moderate and transient, occurring predominantly during the first four weeks of therapy. Discontinuation of varenicline due to these adverse effects occurred in 2% of participants[44].

Drug interactions of varenicline with other medicines are not known. In turn, some effects of the interactions are evident due to stopping tobacco consumption, as the therapeutic effect of varenicline begins to act. Thereby, it is well known that smoking cessation, through enzymatic inductions implying a structure of type CYP1A2, imposes adjusting the doses of theophylline, warfarin, insulin etc.[13].
At the end of treatment, stopping varenicline can cause increased irritability, appetite for smoking, insomnia or depressive mood, in a low percentage of subjects – about 3%[13].

Recommendation

- It is recommended to administer varenicline as an efficiently proven therapy for smoking cessation (level of evidence A) [13] [36] [37] [64].

4.2.4. Treatment with clonidine

Clonidine is used primarily as an anti-hypertensive medication, but it reduces central sympathetic activity by stimulating the α2-adrenergic receptors. Clonidine is not FDA approved for smoking cessation and represents only a second-line medication. Therefore, clinicians need to be aware of the specific warnings regarding this medication as well as its side effect profile. The US Guideline Panel chose to recommend clonidine as a second-line as opposed to first-line agent, because of the warnings associated with clonidine discontinuation, variability in dosages used to test this medication, and lack of FDA approval. So clonidine should be considered for treating tobacco use under a physician's supervision in patients unable to use first-line medications because of contra-indications or in patients who were unable to quit when using first-line medications[57].

Clonidine effectively suppresses the acute symptoms of nicotine withdrawal, such as tension, irritability, anxiety, cravings, and restlessness[65]. A Cochrane review of six clinical trials found clonidine,

oral or transdermal, more effective than placebo, with two-fold higher abstinence rates[66]. Clonidine seems to be more effective in female smokers, although women generally respond less favourably to smoking cessation treatments[67]. The side effects of clonidine, especially sedation, fatigue, orthostatic hypotension, dizziness, and dry mouth, limit its widespread use.

Also, it should be noted that abrupt discontinuation of clonidine can result in symptoms such as nervousness, agitation, headache and tremor, accompanied or followed by a rapid rise in blood pressure and elevated catecholamine levels[57].

Precautions, warnings, contra-indications, adverse effects

Pregnant smokers should be encouraged to quit without medication. Clonidine has not been shown to be effective for tobacco cessation in pregnant smokers. (Clonidine is an FDA pregnancy class C agent.)

Clonidine has not been evaluated in breast-feeding patients.

Patients who engage in potentially hazardous activities, such as operating machinery or driving, should be warned of a possible sedative effect of clonidine.

Most commonly reported side effects are: dry mouth (40%), drowsiness (33%), dizziness (16%), sedation (10%) and constipation (10%).

As an anti-hypertensive medication, clonidine can be expected to lower blood pressure in most patients. Therefore, clinicians should monitor blood pressure when using this medication.

Rebound hypertension: when discontinuing clonidine therapy, failure to reduce the dose gradually over a period of 2-4 days may result in a rapid increase in blood pressure, agitation, confusion, tremor.

Suggestions for clinical use

Clonidine is available in either 1 mg oral or transdermal (TD) form, on prescription only. Treatment with clonidine must be initiated shortly before (i.e. up to 3 days) or on the quit date.

Dosage: If the patient is using transdermal clonidine, at the start of each week, he/she should place a new patch on a relatively hairless location between the neck and waist. Users should not discontinue clonidine therapy abruptly. Initial dosage is typically 0.10 mg bid. orally or 0.10 mg/day TD, increasing by 0.10 mg/day per week, if needed. Treatment duration ranges from 3 to 10 weeks[57].

Recommendation

- Clonidine is an effective smoking cessation treatment. It may be used under a physician's supervision as a second-line agent to treat tobacco dependence (level of evidence = B)[57].

4.2.5. Treatment with nortriptyline

Antidepressant drug

The relationship between depressed mood and smoking behaviour suggests that anti-depressant drugs may have a role in smoking cessation. Several anti-depressants, including doxepin, nortriptyline and moclobemide, have shown some effectiveness in smoking cessation. Nortriptyline is a tricyclic anti-depressant that has been shown to be as effective as bupropion and NRT in smoking cessation. The action of nortriptyline in stopping smoking is independent of its anti-depressant effect, therefore its use is not restricted to people with a history of depressive symptoms during smoking cessation[68].

Efficacy

Compared to placebo, nortriptyline approximately doubles rates of smoking abstinence. This drug is not FDA approved for smoking cessation and is recommended only as a second-line treatment[69].

In a randomized trial published in 1998, A. V. Prochazka et al. concluded that nortriptyline led to an increased short-term cessation rate compared with placebo. In addition, there were significant, but relatively small reductions in withdrawal symptoms, like anxiety, tension, anger, irritability, low concentration, restlessness and impatience, by day 8 after quit day, in the nortriptyline group[70].

Adverse events

Adverse effects associated with nortriptyline, such as anticholinergic effects (dry mouth, blurred vision, constipation and urinary retention), H1-histamine receptors (sedation, drowsiness, weight gain), and α1-adrenergic receptors (orthostatic hypotension) may not be well tolerated in some patients[69]. Data extracted from 17 studies suggest that nortriptyline, at doses between 75 mg and 100 mg, is not significantly associated with serious adverse events when administered in patients without underlying cardiovascular disease[71].

Meta-analysis of trials using nortriptyline as the only pharmacotherapy showed a significant long-term benefit. Whether nortriptyline is more or less effective than bupropion, or whether using nortripytline plus NRT increases quit rates, remains unclear. This pharmacotherapy is not licensed for smoking

cessation in most countries. Patients will need to be monitored closely for known adverse effects such as constipation, sedation, urinary retention and cardiac problems. When taken as an overdose, nortriptyline could be fatal. Serious adverse effects have not been a cause for concern in trials for smoking cessation, but the number of such patients exposed has been relatively small. This leads to a lack of consensus over the use of nortriptyline as a first-line or second-line therapy[72].

Dosage

Nortriptyline should be started while the patient is still smoking, with a quit date set for 10 to 28 days later. The initial dose is 25 mg/day, increased gradually to 75-100 mg/day over 10 days to 5 weeks. The maximum dose can be continued for 8-12 weeks and tapered down at the end, to avoid withdrawal symptoms that may occur if it is stopped abruptly. There is limited evidence of any benefit of extending treatment more than three months.

Practical points for using nortriptyline:

There is insufficient evidence to recommend combining nortriptyline with any other smoking cessation medication.

People with cardiovascular disease should use nortriptyline with caution, as cardiac conductivity can/ may be affected. Tricyclic anti-depressants are contra-indicated in the immediate recovery period after myocardial infarction and in arrhythmia.

There is insufficient evidence to recommend the use of nortriptyline by pregnant women or young people under 18 who are smokers. There is insufficient evidence to recommend using nortriptyline to prevent smoking relapse; long-term use is not recommended.

In a real life study to compare effectiveness of NRT, bupropion, nortriptyline and combination therapy and to describe factors associated with treatment success, Prado et al. sustain their point of view, in agreement with the findings from the meta-analysis of Wagena et al.[73], that nortriptyline is a significant treatment option, given its efficacy (comparable to those first-line options), safety and, especially, its low cost and wide availability. In their opinion, perhaps, considering the threat of a global tobacco epidemic – and even more significant impacts on the less affluent nations – the inclusion of nortriptyline in the therapeutic arsenal of smoking cessation may be a promising step towards a wider access to treatment, especially in developing countries. Based on these findings, authors propose the inclusion of nortriptyline among the list of first-line drugs for smoking cessation. However, the major limitation of this report is that it was a retrospective, uncontrolled and not randomized study and available options

of treatment regimens were chosen by individual criteria on a case-by-case basis or according to the availability of medication in the public health system[73].

Clinicians need to be aware of the side effect profile and the lack of EMEA and FDA approval for nortriptyline as a tobacco dependence treatment. This medication should be considered for treating tobacco use only under a physician's supervision and in those patients unable to use first-line medications because of contra-indications or just in patients who have been unable to quit using first-line medications.

Recommendation

- Nortriptyline is an effective smoking cessation treatment and may be used under a physician's supervision as a second-line agent to treat tobacco dependence (level of evidence A)[57].

References

1 *Carson KV, Brinn MP, Peters M, Veale A, Esterman AJ, Smith BJ Can smoking cessation interventions targeted at Indigenous populations achieve smoking abstinence? http://summaries.cochrane.org/CD009046/can-smoking-cessation-interventions-targeted-at-indigenous-populations-achieve-smoking-abstinence*

2 *Barth J, Critchley JA, Bengel J Psychosocial smoking cessation interventions such as behavioural counselling, telephone support and self-help interventions are effective in helping people with coronary heart disease stop smoking. Published Online: January 21, 2009 http://summaries.cochrane.org/CD006886/ psychosocial-smoking-cessation-interventions-such-as-behavioural-counselling-telephone-support-and-self-help- interventions-are-effective-in-helping-people-with-coronary-heart-disease-stop-smoking*

3 *Parsons AC, Shraim M, Inglis J, Aveyard P, Hajek P. Interventions for preventing weight gain after smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2009, Issue 1. Art.*

4 *Hajek P, Stead LF. Aversive smoking for smoking cessation. Cochrane Library 2004 Issue 1http://www.update-software.com/ccweb/cochrane/revabstr/ab000546.htm*

5. *Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB et al. Treating Tobacco use and dependence. Clinical practice guideline 2008 update Rockville, MD, US Department of Health and Human Services 2008*

6 *Bolliger C, Zellweger JP, Danielsson T and al. Smoking reduction with oral nicotine inhalers: double blind, randomised clinical trial of efficacy and safety. BMJ 2000 ; 321 : 329-333*

7 *Anthonisen N, Connett J and Muttay R for the Lung Health Study Group. Smoking and lung function of lung health study participants after 11 years. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2002 ; 166 : 675-79.*

8 *Anthonisen N, Connett J and Muttay R for the Lung Health Study Group. Smoking and lung function of lung*
h *ealth study participants after 11 years. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2002 ; 166 : 675-79.*

9 *Benowitz NL, Jacob P Nicotine and cotinine elimination pharmacokinetics in smokers and non-smokers.Clin Pharmacol Ther. 1993 Mar;53(3):316-23*

10 *Zhang L, Samet J, Caffo B et Punjabi NM. Cigarette smoking and nocturnal sleep architecture. Am J*

Epidemiol 2006;164: 529-37

11 *Hays J.T., Hurt R.D., Decker P.A., Croghan I.T., Oxford K.P., Patten C.A., A randomized, controlled trial of Bupropion sustainedrelease for preventing tobacco relapse in recovering alcoholics, Nicotine Tob.Res., 2009 Jul;11(7):85967)*

12 *GarcıaRıo F, Serrano S, Mediano O, Alonso A, Villamor J. Safety profile of Bupropion for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Lancet 2001; 358: 1009–1010*

13 *Trofor A., Mihaltan F., Mihaicuta S., Pop M., Todea D et.al., Romanian Society of Pulmonologists Smoking Cessation and Smoker's Assistance Guidelines (GREFA), 2-nd ed. – Tehnopress Iaşi, 2010, www.srp.ro*

14 *JimenezRuiz C., Pharmacological treatment for smoking cessation, Eur.Respir.Mon., 2008, 42, 7497*

15 *King D.P., Paciga S., Pickering E., Benowitz N.L., Bierut L.J., Conti D.V., Kaprio J., Lerman C.Park P.W., Smoking Cessation Pharmacogenetics: Analysis of Varenicline and Bupropion in Placebo-Controlled Clinical Trials, Neuropsychopharmacology (2012) 37, 641–650*

16 *Roddy, E. (2004). Bupropion and other nonnicotine pharmacotherapies, BMJ 328: 509511*

17 *Aubin HJ. Tolerability and safety of sustainedrelease Bupropion in the management of smoking cessation., Drugs 2002; 62: Suppl. 2, 45–52*

18 *David SP, Strong DR, Munafo`MR, et al. Bupropion efficacy for smoking cessation is influenced by the DRD2 Taq1A polymorphism: analysis of pooled data from two clinical studies, Nicotine Tob Res 2007; 9: 1521–1527*

19 *Ebbert JO, Fagerstrom K., Pharmacological interventions for the treatment of smokeless tobacco use, CNS Drugs. 2012 Jan 1;26(1):1-10. doi: 10.2165/11598450-000000000-00000., PMID: 22136150 [PubMed - in process)*

20 *Cox LS, Nollen NL, Mayo MS, Choi WS, Faseru B, Benowitz NL, Tyndale RF, Okuyemi KS, Ahluwalia JS., Bupropion for Smoking Cessation in African American Light Smokers: A Randomized Controlled Trial. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2012 Feb 22;104(4):290-8*

21 *Hays J.T., Hurt R.D., Rigotti N.A., Niaura R., Gonzales D., Durcan M.J., Sachs D.P., Wolter T.D.,Buist A.S.,Johnston J.A., White J.D., Sustainedrelease Bupropion for pharmacologic relapse prevention after smoking cessation, a randomized, controlled trial, Ann.Intern.Med., 2001, Sept., 18, 135(6), 42333*

22 *GarcıaRıo F, Serrano S, Mediano O, Alonso A, Villamor J. Safety profile of Bupropion for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, Lancet 2001; 358: 1009–1010*

23 *Fiore M. C.,Tobacco Use and Dependence: A 2011 Update of Treatments CME/CE, http://www.medscape.org/viewarticle/757167*

24 *Beyens M.N.,Guy C., Mounier G., Laporte S., Ollagnier M., Serious adverse reactions of Bupropion for smokingcessation: analysis of the French Pharmacovigilance Database from 2001 to 2004, Drug Saf., 2008;31(11):101726)*

25 *Tackett A.E.,Smith K.M., Bupropion induced angioedema, Am.J.Health Syst, Pharm., 2008 Sep 1;65(17):162730)*

26 *Chang Seong Kim, Joon Seok Choi,Eun Hui Bae, Soo Wan Kim, Hyponatremia Associated with Bupropion, Electrolyte Blood Press 9:23-26, 2011, ISSN 1738-5997*

27 *Hurt R.D., Ebbert J.O.,, Hays T.J., McFadden D.D., Treating Tobacco dependence in a Medical Setting, CA Cancer J Clin 2009; 59:314326)*

28 *http://www.fda.gov/%20Drugs/DrugSafety/PostmarketDrugSafetyInformationfor PatientsandProviders/%20DrugSafetyInformationforHeathcareProfessionals/ucm169986.htm*

29 *www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm170100.htm*

30 *Mahmoudi M, Coleman CI, Sobieraj DM., Systematic review of the cost-effectiveness of Varenicline vs. Bupropion for smoking cessation., Int J Clin Pract. 2012 Feb;66(2):171-82*

31 *Fagerstrom K., Hughes J., Varenicline in the treatment of Tobacco dependence, Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment 2008:4(2) 353–363*

32 *Benowitz NL, Porchet H, Jacob P 3rd. 1989. Nicotine dependence and tolerance in man: pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamics investigations, Prog Brain Res, 79:279–87*

33 *Rollema H, Chambers LK, Coe JW, et al. 2007a. Pharmacological profi le of the α4β2 nicotinic acetylcholine r eceptor partial agonist Varenicline, an effective smoking cessation aid, Neuropharmacology, 52:985–94*

34 *Rollema H, Coe JW, Chambers LK, et al. 2007b. Rationale, pharmacology and clinical effi cacy of partial agonists of α4β2 nAHc receptors for smoking cessation, Trends Pharmacol Sci, 28:316–25*

35 *Ebbert J.O., Wyatt K.D., Hays J.T. Klee E.W., Hurt R.D., Varenicline for smoking cessation: efficacy, safety, and treatment recommendations, Dove Press, Patient Preference and Adherence 2010:4, 355-362*

36 *Jorenby E.D., Phd, Hays T.J., MD, Rigotti N.A., MD, Azoulay S., MD, Watsky E.J., MD, Williams E.K., Phd, Billing C.B., MS, Gong J., MD, Reeves K.R., MD, Efficacy of Varenicline,, an α4β2 Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor Partial Agonist, vs Placebo or SustainedRelease Bupropion for Smoking Cessation, JAMA, July 5, 2006*

37 *Gonzales, D., Rennard, S. I., Nides, M., Oncken, C., Azoulay, S., Billing, C. B., Watsky, E. J., Gong, J., Williams, K. E., Reeves, K. R., for the Varenicline Phase 3 Study Group, (2006). Varenicline, an alpha4beta2 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor partial agonist, vs sustainedrelease Bupropion and placebo for smoking cessation: a randomized controlled trial, JAMA 296: 4755*

38 *Stapleton JA, Watson L, Spirling LI, et al. 2008. Varenicline in the routine treatment of Tobacco dependence:a pre – post comparison with nicotine replacement therapy and an evaluation in those with mental illness, Addiction, 103:146–54)*

39 *Aubin H-J, Bobak A, Britton JR, et al. 2008. Varenicline versus transdermal nicotine patch for smoking cessation: results from a randomised, open-label trial, Thorax, 8 February 2008; [Epub ahead of print] doi:10.1136/thx.2007.090647)*

40 *Hitomi Tsukahara, RN; Keita Noda, MD; Keijiro Saku, MD* A Randomized Controlled Open Comparative Trial of Varenicline vs Nicotine Patch in Adult Smokers– Efficacy, Safety and Withdrawal Symptoms (The VN-SEESAW Study) Circulation Journal Vol.74, April 2010,771-8)*

41 *Cahill K, Stead LF, Lancaster T. Nicotine receptor partial agonists for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009;1.*

42 *Nides M, Glover ED, Reus VI, et al. Varenicline versus Bupropion SR or placebo for smoking cessation: a pooled analysis, Am J Health Behav.2008;32:664–675.*

43 *West R, Baker CL, Cappelleri JC, et al. Effect of Varenicline and Bupropion SR on craving, nicotine withdrawal symptoms, and rewarding effects of smoking during a quit attempt, Psychopharmacology (Berl). 2008;197:371–377.*

44 *Zheng-Xiong Xi, Preclinical pharmacology, efficacy, and safety of Varenicline in smoking cessation and clinical utility in high risk patients, Drug, Healthcare and Patient Safety 2010:2 39–48.*

45 *Tonstad S, Tonnesen P, Hajek P, et al. Effect of maintenance therapy with Varenicline on smoking cessation: A randomized controlled trial, .JAMA, 2006;296(1):64–71*

46 *Hajek P, Tonnesen P, Arteaga C, Russ C, Tonstad S. Varenicline in prevention of relapse to smoking: Effect of quit pattern on response to extended treatment, Addiction, 2009; 104(9):1597–1602.*

47 *Williams KE, Reeves KR, Billing CB Jr, Pennington AM, Gong J. A double-blind study evaluating the long-*

term safety of Varenicline for smoking cessation, Curr Med Res Opin. 2007;23(4):793–801.

48 *Gonzales, D., Jorenby, D., Brandon,T., Arteaga,C., Lee, T. Immediate versus delayed quitting and rates of relapse among smokers treated successfully with Varenicline, Bupropion SR or placebo Addiction, 105, 2002– 2013)*

49 *Tashkin D., Rennard S., Hays T., Ma W., Lee C.T., Efficacy and safety of Varenicline for smoking cessation in patients with mild to moderate chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) Chest Meeting, October 1, 2009*

50 *Rigotti NA, Pipe AL, Benowitz NL, Arteaga C, Garza D, Tonstad S. Efficacy and safety of Varenicline for smoking cessation in patients with cardiovascular disease: a randomized trial, Circulation 2010; 121:221-9*

51 *Qu Cui, Robinson L., Elston, D., Smaill.F., Cohen J., Quan,C., McFarland N., Thabane L., McIvor A., Zeidler J., Smieja M., Safety and Tolerability of Varenicline Tartrate (Champix/Chantix) for Smoking Cessation in HIV-Infected Subjects: A Pilot Open-Label Study, AIDS PATIENT CARE and STDs Volume 26, Number 1, 2012 [a] Mary Ann Liebert,Inc.DOI:10.1089/apc.2011.0199*

52 *McClure J.B., Swan G.E.,Catz S.L., Jack L., Javitz H., McAfee T. Mona Deprey M., Richards, Zbikowski S.M.Smoking Outcome by Psychiatric History after Behavioral and Varenicline Treatment, J Subst Abuse Treat. 2010 June ; 38(4): 394–402. doi:10.1016/j.jsat.2010.03.007*

53 *Fagerstrom K., Gilljam H.,Metcalfe M.,Tonstad S., Messig M., Stopping smokeless tobacco with Varenicline: randomized double blind placebo controlled trial, BMJ 2010;341:c6549 doi:10.1136/bmj.c6549*

54 *Ebbert J.O., M.Sc., Croghan I.T., North F., Schroeder D.R. A pilot study to assess smokeless tobacco use reduction with Varenicline, Nicotine & Tobacco Research, Volume 12, Number 10 (October 2010) 1037–1040)*

55 *Ebbert J.O., Burke MV, Hays JT, Hurt RD. Combination treatment with Varenicline and nicotine replacement therapy. Nicotine Tob Res.2009;11(5):572–576)*

56 *Swan G.E., McClure J.B., PhD, Jack, M.J., Zbikowski S.M.,, Javitz H.S., Catz S.L., Deprey M., Richards J., McAfee T.A.,Behavioral Counseling and Varenicline Treatment for Smoking Cessation, Am J Prev Med. 2010 May ; 38(5): 482–490. doi:10.1016/j.amepre.2010.01.024*

57 *Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: 2008 Update, Clinical Practice Guideline. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services. Public Health Service. May 2008*

58 *Kasliwal R, Wilton LV, Shakir SA. Safety and drug utilization profile of Varenicline as used in general practice in England: interim results from a prescription-event monitoring study, Drug Saf. 2009;32:499–507*

59 *Garrison GD, Dugan SE. Varenicline: a first-line treatment option for smoking cessation. Clin Ther. 2009;31:463– 491.)*

60 *Leung L.K. Patafio F.M.,Rosser W.W.Gastrointestinal adverse effects of Varenicline at maintenance dose: a meta-analysis, Clinical Pharmacology 2011, 11:15,http://www.biomedcentral.com/1472-6904/11/15*

61 *Singh S., Loke Y.K., Spangler J.K., Furberg K.D Risk of serious adverse cardiovascular events associated with Varenicline: a systematic review and meta-analysis, CMAJ, September 6, 2011, 183(12), 1359-66*

62 *Tonstad S., Davies S., Flammer M., Russ C., Hughes J., Psychiatric adverse events in randomized, double blind, placebocontrolled clinical trials of Varenicline, Drug Saf., 2010, 33(4), 289301*

63 *Wang C, Xiao D, Chan KP, Pothirat C, Garza D, Davies S. Varenicline for smoking cessation: a placebo-controlled, randomized study. Respirology.2009;14:384–392.*

64 *Nides, M., Oncken, C., Gonzales, D., Rennard, S., Watsky, E. J., Anziano, R., Reeves, K. R., for the Varenicline Study Group, (2006). Smoking Cessation With Varenicline, a Selective {alpha}4beta2 Nicotinic Receptor Partial Agonist: Results From a 7Week, Randomized, Placebo and BupropionControlled Trial With*

1Year Followup.. Arch Intern Med 166: 156168

65 *Frishman WH. Smoking cessation pharmacotherapy. Ther Adv Cardiovasc Dis. 2009;3:287–308. PubMed]*

66 *Gourlay SG, Stead LF, Benowitz NL. Clonidine for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2004;3:CD000058. [PubMed]*

67 *Glassman AH, Covey LS, Dalack GW, et al. Smoking cessation, clonidine, and vulnerability to nicotine among dependent smokers. Clin Pharmacol Ther. 1993;54:670–679. [PubMed]*

68 *Ministry of Health (MoH). New Zealand smoking cessation guideline. MoH: Wellington; 2007.Available from: www.moh. govt.nz/moh.nsf/indexmh/nz-smoking-cessation-guidelines (Accessed Nov, 2010)*

69 *Herman A.Y., Sofuoglu M., Comparison of Available Treatments for Tobacco Addiction, Curr Psychiatry Rep. 2010 October ; 12(5): 433–40*

70 *Prochazka, A.V. Weaver M.J.,. Keller R.T. Fryer G.E.,. Licari, P.A., Lofaso, D., A Randomized Trial of Nortriptyline for Smoking Cessation Arch Intern Med. 1998;158:2035-39*

71 *Dhippayom T, Chaiyakunapruk N, Jongchansittho T. Safety of nortriptyline at equivalent therapeutic doses forsmoking cessation: a systematic review and meta-analysis, Drug Saf. 2011 Mar 1;34(3):199-210*

72 *http://www.treatobacco.net/en/page_36.php*

73 *Faibischew Prado G., Siqueira Lombardi E.M., Bussacos M.A., Arrabal-Fernandes F.L., Terra-Filho M., de Paula Santos U., A real-life study of the effectiveness of different pharmacological approaches to the treatment of smoking cessation: re-discussing the predictors of success, CLINICS 2011;66(1):65-71*

4.2.6 Cytisine

Cytisine is a natural alkaloid extracted from the seeds of plants such as cytisus laburnum and sophora tetraptera. Cytisine acts as similarly to varenicline, being a partial agonist of alpha 4 beta 2-nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, responsible for reinforcing the effects of nicotine, also preventing nicotine from binding to these receptors [1 2], thus reducing the satisfaction and reward related to tobacco use, relevant negative withdrawal symptoms and cravings[2 3].

Tabex® is available in oral tablet form containing 1.5 mg cytisine and has been produced and marketed by the Bulgarian company Sopharma Pharmaceuticals since September 1964[4]. Tabex® was used for tobacco cessation for many decades on a national scale in the former Socialist countries, Bulgaria, Hungary, Poland, German Democratic Republic, Soviet Union being the first ever medication in human history officially approved for this purpose. However, licensing and use of cytisine in other parts of the world did not develop for decades, in part due to the lack of evidence-based, more recently GCP compliant, trials [2 5 6].

The global search for tobacco cessation products with high availability, acceptability, efficacy and safety, combined with low cost, relevant for large scale cessation interventions within state supported programmes has recently boosted interest in cytisine.

Trials consider cytisine as an alternative to nicotine-based products and anti-depressants, especially in low- and middle-income groups and in cultures where natural medicines are widely used[6]. A 25-day course of cytisine is five to fifteen times cheaper than a 25-day NRT treatment[5].

A double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of cytisine for smoking cessation in medium-dependent workers (n=171) in Kyrgyzstan was published in 2008. At 26 weeks 10.6% of patients were abstinent in the group taking cytisine compared to 1.2% in the placebo group[2].

In the post-Soviet Russian Federation Tabex® was officially registered for tobacco cessation in 1999 and is purchased over the counter. The first randomized controlled double blind trial on therapeutic effectiveness and safety was published in 2009 (n=196). The percentage of individuals who did not have any effect when trying to quit smoking among those who had taken Tabex® compared to the placebo group was 13% and 26% respectively. The percentage of smokers who abstained from smoking for one or more periods was 50% and 30.8% respectively. The percentage of smokers who had been abstinent for 12 weeks or longer was 50% and 37.5% respectively. No adverse effects were registered in 70% and 84% of patients in the two groups[7].

A thoroughly conducted randomized placebo-controlled trial in Poland (n=740), published in 2011, confirmed previously obtained results and found that cytisine increased 12-month continuous abstinence from tobacco use to 8.4% compared to 2.4% in the placebo group[8].

Results of the first parallel group, single-blind, non-inferiority randomized controlled clinical trial of cytisine versus nicotine-replacement therapy in people motivated to quit smoking in New Zealand (n=1,310) are expected in late 2013[6].

The dosage regimen recommended by the manufacturer starts at 1 tablet (1.5 mg) every 2 hours (up to 6 tablets a day) over days 1 to 3. Smoking must be reduced, otherwise symptoms of nicotine overdose will develop. If there is no desired effect, the treatment is discontinued and a next attempt can be made in two to three months. With a positive response, the patient continues with a dosage of up to 5 tablets a day (1 tablet every 2.5 hours) from days 4 to 12. Smoking must be discontinued on the 5th day. After this up to 4 tablets a day (1 tablet every 3 hours) from days 13 to 16, then up to 3 tablets per day (1 tablet every 5 hours) from days 17 to 20, followed by 1 to 2 tablets per day (1 tablet every 6 to 8 hours) from days 21 to 25, then stop treatment.

Observing the recommended dose of cytisine a few adverse effects, similar to the intake of NRT, were registered in trials[5 7 8]. According to Periodic Safety Update authorities in Europe there are no safety signals for serious adverse reactions to cytisine based on millions of patients exposed to this product[8].

Cytisine overdose is similar to nicotine intoxication, producing effects such as nausea, vomiting, clonic

convulsions, tachycardia, pupil dilation, headache, general weakness, respiratory paralysis[9].

References

1 *Cahill K, Stead LF, Lancaster T. Nicotine receptor partial agonists for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, The Cochrane Library. 2011. P. Art. No.: CD006103*

2 *Vinnikov D, Brimkulov N, Burjubaeva A. A double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of cytisine for smoking cessation in medium-dependent workers. J Smoking Cessation. 2008;3(1):57-62*

3 *Tutka P, Zatonski W. Cytisine for the treatment of nicotine addiction: from a molecule to therapeutic efficacy. Pharmacol Rep. 2006;58(6):777-798*

4 *www.tabex.bg*

5 *Etter JF. Cytisine for smoking cessation: a literature review and a meta-analysis. Arch Intern Med. 2006; 166 (15):1553-1559. Doi: 10/1001/archinte.166.15.1553*

6 *Walker N., Howe C., Bullen C., McRobbie H., Glover M., Parag V., Williman J., Veale R., Nosa V., Barnes J. Study protocol for a non-inferiority trial of cytisine versus nicotine-replacement therapy in people motivated to quit smoking. BMC Public Health 2011; 11:880. Published online 2011 November 21.doi*

7 *Levshin VF, Slepchenko NI, Radkevich NV. Randomizirovannoe kontroliruemoe issledovanie effectivnosti preparata Tabeks® pri lechenii tabachnoy zavisimosti. (A randomized controlled study of the efficacy of Tabex® (Cytisine) for treatment of tobacco craving) / Voprosy narkologii. – 2009, N5. – pp. 13-22. Also in Medicinskiy vestnik, #33-34 (502-503), 27 November 2009, p. 19 (in Russian)*

8 *West R, Zatonski W, Cedzynska M, Lewandowska D, Pazik J, Aveyard P, Stapleton J. Placebo-Controlled Trial of Cytisine for Smoking Cessation. New Engl J Med. 2011; 365: (13): 1193–1200. doi:10.1056/ NEJMoa1102035*

9 *Musshoff F, Madea B. Fatal cytisine intoxication and analysis of biological samples with LC-MS/MS. Forensic Sci Int. 2009; 186(1-3):e1-4. Doi: 10.1016/j.forsciint.2009.01.011*

4.2.7 E-cigarettes

E-cigarettes are a new product which are being marketed more frequently and which are presented both as a tobacco replacement product and as a smoking cessation product. Most sales of cartridges for e-cigarettes contain nicotine at various undefined levels. The smoke-like vapour produced by ethylene glycol or glycerol is an irritant when exposure is repeated, but is not a severe toxin in short-term use.

With disposable cartridges, e-cigarette have become more economical than regular cigarettes per nicotine puff absorbed and experimentation with e-cigarettes by young people is becoming more and more common throughout Europe. The e-cigarette has now become a tobacco initiation product, a product for consumption in non-smoking areas, a product to promote smoking. However, it is also presented as a smoking cessation or harm reduction product.

The lack of reliable studies had led most national authorities to prohibit the promotion of this product as a smoking cessation product. Currently, there is no clear-cut response by doctors with regard to this ambiguous product. There is no evidence of frequent or severe adverse effects, but there is likewise no evidence of efficacy for smoking cessation, so in view of the absence of studies health professionals should not recommended this product, but there is no strong argue to contradict a patient's choice if the patient chooses to use e-cigarettes as an adjuvant to other smoking cessation articles.

Emissions of total suspended particulate matter (TSP) derived from e-cigarettes are around 60 mcg/m^3, 10-15 times lower than those of conventional cigarettes For each of the different fractions of PM, (PM_{1}, $_{2.5}$, $_{7}$, $_{10}$), there is a lower density (ranging from 6 to 21 times) for e-cigarettes compared to conventional cigarettes, but the levels still slightly exceed WHO outdoor air quality guideline values[1].

E-cigarettes were found to have immediate adverse physiologic effects after short-term use that are similar to some of the effects seen with tobacco smoking; however, the long-term health effects of e-cigarette use are unknown but potentially adverse and worthy of further investigation[2].

References

1 Ann Ig 2012; 24: 1Electronic cigarettes: an qualitative evaluation of exposure to chemicals and fine particulate matter (PM) R.M. Pellegrino, B. Tinghino, G. Mangiaracina, A. Marani, M. Vitali, C. Protano, M.S. Cattaruzza

2 Short-term Pulmonary Effects of Using an Electronic Cigarette:Impact on Respiratory Flow Resistance, Impedance, and Exhaled Nitric Oxide; Constantine I. Vardavas, MD, MPH, PhD; Nektarios Anagnostopoulos, MD; Marios Kougias, MD; Vassiliki Evangelopoulou, MD; Gregory N. Connolly, DMD, MPH; Panagiotis K. Behrakis, MD, PhD, FCCP; http://journal.publications.chestnet.org/article.aspx?articleid=1187047

4.3. Non-pharmacological therapy for tobacco use and dependence

In addition to pharmacotherapy, a number of non-pharmacological interventions are needed to provide a holistic therapeutic approach to tobacco use and dependence. These are so-called psycho-social treatments: individual counselling, proactive telephone counselling and group counselling. These interventions can be delivered in many formats and by any number of health care professionals who interact with the patient. Tailored materials, both print and web-based, are effective as well in this category of interventions to help people quit.

Recommendations

- Treatment of tobacco dependence requires specific medication, and individual cognitive-behavioural counselling, telephone support and a group counselling (level of evidence A).
- Educational materials and information sources available via the Internet contribute to increasing successful tobacco abstinence (level of evidence B)[1].

References

1 Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: 2008 Update, Clinical Practice Guideline. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services. Public Health Service. May 2008

4.3.1. Telephone support and self-help materials

4.3.1.1 Telephone support

In many countries, a toll-free phone service exists. If they call this phone number, smokers can receive information about access to local smoking cessation centres and can receive advice on how to quit with minimal or full counselling. Using the telephone to deliver cognitive-behavioural therapy is similar to the structure of traditional face-to-face contact, but is more flexible. Appointments can be arranged at suitable times, including lunch breaks and in the evening and Saturday. Tele-working saves both time and money, as there is no need to travel to and from appointments. Participants can choose whether to be contacted at home or on their own mobile phone and are offered telephone support to guide them in putting into practice various quitting strategies and in making positive changes in their own daily lives. Telephone calls are in general 20-25 minutes long, but this is flexible and can be adapted to meet individual needs[1].

Quitlines are defined as telephone counselling in which at least some of the contacts are initiated by the quitlines counsellor to deliver tobacco cessation interventions, including call-back counselling.

Several meta-analytic reviews have established that proactive telephone counselling is an effective intervention for smoking cessation. The current US Public Health Clinical Practice Guideline and the Guide to Community Preventive Services both recommend proactive telephone counselling as a method to help smokers quit. Most of the quitlines studies conducted so far have focused on proactive quitlines. Proactive quitlines may provide some form of immediate “reactive” assistance when a tobacco-user first calls, but they also provide more comprehensive services through “proactive” calls, which often entail multiple follow-up sessions, typically scheduled by agreement with the smoker.

Efficacy of quitlines

Randomized, controlled trials have established the efficacy of such proactive interventions, with the most recent meta-analysis of 13 studies showing a 56% increase in quit rates when compared with self-help. Proactive telephone counselling has a positive impact on smoking cessation. Proactive telephone counselling increased long-term abstinence for both actively and passively recruited smokers[2].

Reactive quitlines, which only respond to callers’ immediate requests for assistance, have not been studied as widely as proactive quitlines. Although there is some evidence of its effectiveness, this strategy has not been recommended by the various guidelines.

The overall evidence indicates that quitlines have the potential not only to provide effective assistance to those who seek it, but also to increase quitting among tobacco-users generally. One important advantage of quitlines is their accessibility. A telephone operation eliminates many of the barriers of traditional cessation classes, such as having to wait for classes to form or needing to arrange for transportation. Quitlines are particularly helpful for people with limited mobility and those who live in rural or remote areas. Due to their quasi-anonymous nature, telephone-based services may also appeal to those who are reluctant to seek help provided in a group setting. As accessibility of quitlines increases, data indicate that smokers are several times more likely to use such a service than they are to use a face-to-face programme; a quitline is a good way to let tobacco-users, wherever they are, know that help is available[3].

In a telephone counselling intervention targeting Asian immigrants with limited English proficiency telephone counselling was effective for Chinese-, Korean-, and Vietnamese-speaking smokers. Such protocol should be incorporated into existing quitlines, with possible extension to other languages[4].

Quitlines significantly increase abstinence rates compared to minimal or no counselling interventions (12.7% v. 8.5%), as based on meta-analysis of 9 studies[1]. In a 2008 meta-analysis of quitlines, six studies were analyzed comparing the effect of adding quitline counselling to medication v. medication alone. The addition of quitline counselling to medication significantly improved abstinence rates (28.1%) compared to medication alone (23.2%)[1].

4.3.1.2 Self-help materials

Interventions delivered by means of widely varied self-help materials (whether as stand-alone or as adjuvant treatments) appear to increase abstinence rates compared to no intervention. This category includes: booklets, leaflets, manuals, media materials, reactive telephone help lines, computer/web-based programs, and various community programmes. Self-help interventions are defined as “any manual or programme to be used by individuals to assist a quit attempt not assisted by health professionals, counsellors, or group support.”

Today most people are aware that smoking is dangerous: health messages are widely available and even cigarette packs in most countries now show such health warnings. Yet, approximately 30% of the global population comprises smokers, who continue to ignore these health hazards.

The following contains a sample of a brief explanatory leaflet destined for smoking patients, to help them become familiar with the basic notions about treating tobacco use and dependence.

Example of check list and questions for self-aid material

Why use tobacco?

- What, therefore, is the explanation for continuing smoking, despite so many tobacco control efforts to stop morbidity and mortality caused by tobacco?
- Can we assume that smokers have no regard for their health or do they imagine “this harmful effect cannot happen to me”?
- Are they not capable of realizing the harmful effects shown in educational materials? Or is it something else that makes them unable to quit smoking despite being aware of the dangers?
- Could this be the complex psycho-behavioural and physical changes determined by a chemical substance contained in tobacco? Clearly this is the case[5 6].

Tobacco dependence

- The intensity of nicotinic dependence is very high, higher or similar to heroin and cocaine, much more addictive than alcohol, cannabis or LSD and similar drugs.
- Chronic tobacco use, or in simple terms “smoking”, has been recognized by all psychiatric medical bodies as a disease in itself, inducing physical and psychological as a chronic disease, i.e. tobacco dependence or nicotine dependence.
- Most cigarettes are lit not by free choice but by dependence on nicotine, a highly addictive drug present in all tobacco products[7].
- Chronic tobacco exposure has been proven to cause a wide range of diseases and death due to the numerous toxins and carcinogenic compounds present in tobacco.
- Tobacco manufacturers use many strategies to increase nicotine dependence in tobacco products: additives, flavourings, filter characteristics etc.
- The tobacco industry constantly invests in new markets to target vulnerable categories of potential clients, i.e. children and young people who are the most exposed.
- The best method to react to the tobacco industry is to provide individuals with knowledge and skills based on scientific evidence in order to face this challenge.

Individual implications of tobacco use[8]

- One out of every two tobacco users will die prematurely as the result of a tobacco-related disease.
- Tobacco use is the single largest cause of preventable death.

- More than half of these deaths occur in people aged 35-69 years.
- Every day around the world this number of deaths is equivalent to fifty jumbo jets crashing.
- Tobacco use accounts for: 87% of lung cancer deaths, 82% of COPD (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) incidences, 21% of CHD (coronary heart disease) incidences and 18% of stroke incidences.
- Tobacco use has been shown to cause complications during pregnancy.
- Tobacco use makes a person’s breath, hair and clothes smell bad, causes teeth, fingernails and skin become to become stained and causes clothes to become ruined or burnt.
- Tobacco use decreases athletic performance.
- Tobacco is a major cause of fires and accidental deaths.
- Tobacco use is a gateway to other drug use, and addiction to tobacco may make a person more susceptible to trying other dangerous drugs.

Implications for family, friends, and co-workers of tobacco users[8]

- You are exposing your family, friends and co-workers to environmental or second-hand tobacco smoke.
- Second-hand tobacco smoke increases the risk of lung cancer by 30%. This results in 3000 additional cases of lung cancer per annum.
- Infants and children chronically exposed to second-hand smoke have an increased risk of asthma, other respiratory diseases, malignancies and other health issues. These diseases result in increased hospitalizations and school absence.
- Exposure to tobacco smoke increases the risk of low birth weight babies and sudden infant death syndrome.
- Non-using adults exposed to second-hand smoke are also more likely to have respiratory diseases and symptoms that contribute to absenteeism from work and other activities.
- Spouses of smokers have a higher risk of heart disease and lung cancer.

Benefits of quitting tobacco use

1. Short term benefits

- After 20 minutes blood pressure and pulse rates return to normal.
- After 8 hours carbon monoxide and oxygen levels in the blood return to normal.
- After 24 hours carbon monoxide is eliminated from the body; lungs start to clear out mucus and smoking debris; chances of a heart attack are decreased.
- After 48 hours no nicotine is left in the body; nerve endings start to re-grow; and the ability to smell and taste is improved.

2. Long-term benefits

- Improved breathing.
- More physical energy.
- Better skin tone.
- Reduction in risks of tobacco-related diseases, such as:
  - lung cancer,
  -emphysema,
  - COPD (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease),
  - sudden-death heart attack,
  - CHD (coronary heart disease),
  - atherosclerosis (narrowing of the arteries),
  - stroke,
  - chronic bronchitis.
- Cleaner air for family and friends.
- Fresher smell in homes and cars.
- Financial savings: those who smoke one pack per day, spend on average US$ 1095 p.a.

Preparation to quit

The better prepared to quit you are, the higher the likelihood of success[8]. Some suggestions include:

- Decide positively that you want to quit.
- Make a list of reasons, including personal reasons, medical effects, health benefits, financial advantages and obligations to others.
- Repeat one of these reasons to yourself several times each morning.
- Start conditioning yourself physically with a modest exercise routine. Get lots of rest and drink more fluids.
- Set a target date for quitting within the next two weeks.
- Identify barriers to quitting. What will make it difficult? What situations make you desire tobacco? What can you do to change that?
- Make a list of people who can support your intentions to quit, such as family, friends and co-workers. Discuss your plans with them.
- If any of these people are smokers, ask them to refrain from using tobacco around you or, better yet, ask them to join you in quitting.
- Clear the places where you usually smoke of anything that would remind you of cigarettes – like lighters, ashtrays or matches.
- Clean your house and car; try to remove the smell of smoke as much as possible.
- Make a list of activities, hobbies, and interests that you can do to keep your mind off smoking.
- Prepare yourself with knowledge about the withdrawal symptoms and ways to cope with them.

- Be prepared to face difficult quitting. Learn about “withdrawal syndrome”.
- Nicotine withdrawal consists of symptoms due to suddenly stopping the nicotine supply. Nicotine withdrawal can manifest from the very first 4-12 hours since smoking cessation, through symptoms like:
  - acute/uncontrollable need to smoke (craving);
  - irritability;
  - restlessness, anger, anxiety feelings;
  - tiredness;
  - high appetite, especially for sweets, weight gain;
  - troubles to concentrate/memory troubles;
  - depression;
  - headaches;
  - insomnia;
  - dizziness.

Therapies that help to quit smoking

- The two components that have proven efficient in treating tobacco dependence are: counselling and pharmacotherapy.
- Pharmacological therapy is crucial and it comprises a generous offer of medications, from nicotine substitutes used in various forms (gum, patch, nasal spray, inhaler, sublingual tablet), to anti-depressants, nicotine receptor antagonists etc.
- You must ask your physician or pharmacist to prescribe or recommend medication to quit smoking.
- Combination of various pharmacological therapies can be used with the help of health professionals, the therapy duration can be extended, and dosages can be adjusted to avoid side effects.
- Leaflets, posters, brochures, different educational and self-help written or media materials, together with Internet tools or phone lines may help.
- CBT is a therapeutic technique that attempts to change habitual ways of thinking and feeling about smoking and oneself and provides encouragement and advice on ways of minimizing and managing the desire to smoke.
- Optimally, individual smoking cessation strategies combine advice (a recommendation to quit smoking) with pharmacological treatment (varenicline, bupropion, NRT etc.) and with cognitive-behavioural therapy (CBT).

Table 10: Some practical tips to avoid smoking[7]

EXAMPLES OF BEHAVIOURAL STRATEGIES / TIPS TO AVOID SMOKING
• Learn to refuse the first cigarette!
• Throw away you "smoker kit": lighter, mathes, cigarettes package;
• Change you daily routine!;
• Avoid the use of coffee, cola or tea;
• When you feel the need for smoking, drink a big glass of water or natural fruits juice;
• Eat 3-5 meals/day;
• Breakfast: natural juices, milk products, possibly meat, eggs; be careful to the irreplaceable cigarette next to the mornig coffee!
• Lunch and dinner: preferable raw fruits and vegetables, green vegetables, fruits;
• Before going to sleep - a glass of water or tea;
You must avoid: eating between meals, eating too much sweets; pastry, candies, chocolate;
• Do not hesitate to drink above 2 litters of water/ day;
• Physical exercises, walks in open air, learn relaxation techniques;
• Start practicing a new sport;
• Avoid getting in contact with smokersor situations when you could be tempted to smoke;
• Save the money you used to spend on cigarettes - buy yourself a present instead!

Efficacy of patient educational material

Several studies prove the efficacy of educational material included in programmes for cessation.

A total of 2000 adults were tested using a standard 13-page self-quitting guide (the control group) against the 28-page Free & Clear (F&C) self-quitting guide, the F&C guide and social support instructions for family and friends of the smoker and the F&C guide and social support instructions and four telephone calls with specialists. The F&C telephone counselling programme plus self-help materials was found to be an effective strategy for assisting self-quitters. Use of self-help guides and social support instructions for family and friends did not significantly improve a person's likelihood to quit in comparison to use of the F&C four-call programme[10].

For the US Guideline analysis, 21 studies met the selection criteria to evaluate the effectiveness of providing multiple types of self-help interventions (e.g. pamphlets, video tapes, audio tapes and reactive help lines). The results provide little evidence that the provision of multiple types of self-help, when offered without any person-to-person intervention, significantly influences treatment outcomes (15.7% two or more types of self-help v. 14.4% one type of self-help v. 14.3% no self-help).

In a meta-analysis that addressed the impact of self-help brochures per se, either used as the sole intervention or in addition to counselling, self-help did not significantly boost abstinence rates[1].

4.3.1.3 Computer/web-based help

Computer or Internet-based interventions have the potential to be accessed by a large percentage of the smoking population, may better address special categories like young people and are cheap to deliver. Such interventions may be used as single or adjuvant treatments, by typically collecting information from the patient and then using algorithms to tailor feed-back or recommendations. Current applications permit multiple iterations of feed-back, development and monitoring of a quit plan, and proactive e-mail prompts to users.

Positive effects have been reported for a population study using computer-generated reports based on the stages of change mode and a website study offered in a worksite programme. A study with adolescents reported positive results due to access to a complex intervention that comprised an interactive computer intervention, advice from a clinician, brief motivational interviewing and telephone booster sessions (the control condition was information about eating more fruit and vegetables)[1].

A recent review found few trials reporting success rates for stopping smoking after six months or more, and those trials provided only limited evidence of long-term benefits of Internet and web-based smoking cessation programmes. Internet intervention programmes that provide individually tailored information and support may be more effective than a static website. The Internet may have an additional benefit when used alongside other interventions, such as NRT or other pharmacotherapy. Innovative smoking cessation interventions delivered via the Internet may be more attractive to young people and women who smoke, and less attractive to smokers reporting depression[11].

Internet-based therapy has emerged as a new treatment modality for psychological disorders and health issues and this review is the first attempt to summarize and evaluate the evidence of the effectiveness of Internet therapy for addictions. An extensive literature search was thus conducted to identify studies meeting the criteria of delivering structured Internet-based treatment programmes for addictions that incorporated a component of trained therapist interaction. Only nine studies met the criteria for inclusion, with seven representing a randomized controlled trial; these studies referred not only to tobacco-cessation programmes, but one also referred to Internet-based therapy for

pathological gambling, and another one to a treatment programme for substance abuse. A range of therapeutic models, treatment components and outcome measures was included across these studies. Positive treatment effects were reported following completion of therapy and at longer-term follow-up. The review concluded that Internet-based therapies for addictions are effective in achieving positive behavioural changes, but that more research is required to determine the comparative effectiveness of various Internet-based therapies and their components[12].

References

1 *NHS guided self help talking therapies, www.nice.org.uk/PH010*

2 *Tzelepis F, Paul CL, Walsh RA, McElduff P, Knight J. Proactive telephone counseling for smoking cessation: meta-analyses by recruitment channel and methodological quality. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2011 Jun 22;103(12):922-41. doi: 10.1093/jnci/djr169. Epub 2011 Jun 10*

3 *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Telephone Quitlines: A Resource for Development, Implementation, and Evaluation. Atlanta, GA: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health, Final Edition, September 2004*

4 *Zhu SH, Cummins SE, Wong S, Gamst AC, Tedeschi GJ, Reyes-Nocon J.,The Effects of a Multilingual Telephone Quitline for Asian Smokers: A Randomized Controlled Trial, J.Natl.Cancer Institute,2012, Feb 22,104(4), 299-310, Epub: 25 Feb 2012*

5 *Benowitz NL. Neurobiology of nicotine addiction: implications for smoking cessation treatment, Am J Med 2008; 121: S3-S10*

6 *Benowitz NL. Pharmacology of nicotine: addiction, smoking-induced disease and therapeutics, Ann. Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 2009; 49: 57-71*

7 *Trofor A. et. al., Smoking cessation and smoker's assistance guidelines in Romania (GREFA), Tehnopress publisher House, Iasi, 2010, www.srp.ro*

8 *ACCP kit (5=1 from M1 chapt BD)*

9 *Doll R, Peto R, Boreham J, Sutherland I. Mortality in relation to smoking: 50 years' observations on male British doctors BMJ 2004, doi:10.1136/bmj.38142.554479.A*

10 *Orleans C.T.,Schoenbach V., Wagner E. et. al., Self-Help Quit Smoking Interventions: Effects of Self-Help Materials, Social Support Instructions, and Telephone Counseling, J. Consult Clin Psychol, 1991 iun, 59(3), 439-48*

11 *Civljak M, Sheikh A, Stead LF, Car J. Internet-based interventions for smoking cessation.,Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 9. Art. No.: CD007078. DOI:,10.1002/14651858.CD007078.pub3 Assessed as up to date: July 14, 2010*

12 *Gainsbury S.M., Blaszczynski A. 2011, A systematic review of Internet-based therapy for the treatment of addictions, Clinical Psychology Review, vol. 31, no. 3, pp. 490-498, Publisher's version of article available at http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cpr.2010.11.007*

4.3.2. Motivational interviewing (MI)

Motivation is essential for every smoker who plans to stop using tobacco. Therefore, methods for strengthening a patient's motives to quit are important research objectives[1].

What is motivational interviewing?

Motivational interviewing is a method developed by US psychologist William R. Miller in the 1980s as he was treating patients with problems of abuse. Miller showed that empathic listening could reduce a client's intake of alcohol. Studies indicated that resistance and denial are phenomena that arise in the relation between client and counsellor. The first MI book , written by Miller in collaboration with Stephen Rollnick, a psychologist from the UK, was published in 1991 (Miller 2002). Rollnick later developed shorter versions of MI suitable for use in health care. In essence, the method aims to offer interested clients information on health risks coupled with a specific dependence, and evoke interest for change. The second edition of the book, with the suffix *Preparing People for Change* mirrors this evolution. A third, revised edition is planned for 2012. MI is now practised in many countries for treatment of abuse such as alcohol, tobacco, as well as for those who need improved nutrition and exercise. MI is also widely used for gambling problems, for treatment compliance and in the criminal system.

MI describes what you as counsellor can do in order to increase the probability that the client can achieve behaviour change. It builds on improving the counsellor's understanding of how we communicate and relate better to the patient.

- The counsellor acts as a collaborator and sees himself/herself as an equal.
- The counsellor searches for and evokes the client's own thoughts and ideas about his/her smoking and how to change it.
- The counsellor shows respect for the client's autonomy and his/her right and capacity to make decisions.

Underlying principles of MI

- *Show empathy*. The counsellor clearly shows an interest in trying to understand the patient. This is done through reflections and summaries.
- *Highlight discrepancies*. The counsellor helps the patient to become aware of the gap between the present situations and how it might look taking into account the patient's goals and values. The feeling of wide discrepancies is a strong driving force for behavioural change provided that the client

has the ability to change.

- *Avoid arguing*. So-called resistance is respected as a natural sign of anxiety or doubt about change. If the counsellor confronts this or starts arguing, the patient's resistance will increase. The counsellor "rolls with" the resistance when it appears, but tries to prevent such situations from arising.
- *Support self-reliance*. The counsellor supports the patient's self-reliance by showing trust in the patient's ability to change. The counsellor shows that he/she appreciates the patient's efforts.

Some important features of MI

- *Asking for permission*. A conversation about tobacco is rarely seen as offensive by patients but it is always wise to approach the subject by asking for permission to bring it up.
- *Ambivalence*. Ambivalence is a natural phase of change. There are always pros and cons for changes, the effects of which may be playing out in a distant future. The counsellor should aim at helping the patient to express his/her reasons for change.
- *Open-ended questions*. Closed questions ask for yes or no responses; open-ended questions ask for longer answers or elaboration.
- *Change talk*. It is important for the counsellor to pick up "change talk", words and thoughts expressed by the patient that might lead to change.
- *Affirm positive talk and behaviour*. The patient will be more ready for change if positive signs or thoughts are identified and affirmed.
- *Reflect upon what you are hearing or seeing*. At their core, reflections are guesses as to what a patient is saying or thinking. Reflections do not confirm agreement with the patient; rather, they tell the patient that the counsellor has been listening and help the patient hear what he/she has been saying.
- *Summarize what has been said*. A summary is a special form of reflection. Summaries remind the patient about major discussion points, the plan of action, and the patient's own reasons for taking action. Summaries are useful in two ways. If the patient slows or stops talking, summaries can act as a bridge to help him/her continue. Summaries may also help remind the patient what he/she has said or point out a connection between his/her statements.

Motivational interviewing in clinical practice

In many ways MI breaks with counselling traditions in medicine. MI reduces the authority of the "expert in a white coat" who talks down to the patient and tells him/her what to do. MI is more akin to inviting the patient to a dance in which patient and counsellor hold each other and follow each other step-by-step across the dance floor. The roles have changed. Some health professionals have a natural talent to talk to patients in a non-judgemental and understanding way and can easily adopt MI. More often, however, health professionals revert to old habits and start ordering the patient around. Hence, to master MI well, a lot of training is needed and expert follow-up of adherence to counselling procedures

is important (and expensive).

In order to make MI more accessible and more usable a simpler version has been developed called rapid engagement.

Rapid engagement (RE). Rapid engagement is an abbreviated and simplified version of MI designed for use in a busy doctor's office[3]. RE uses a simple set of questions. A VAS-scale may be used to visualise the degree of motivation, but is not necessary as similar assessments can be made verbally.

The importance of change. Question 1: How important is it for you to quit smoking on a scale from 0 to 10 (0 = not important at all, and 10 = very important)? The response steers the ensuing discussion. The counsellor may follow up by "provoking" the patient by saying "I would have thought a lower number". This often results in a discussion where the patient takes the lead and is eager to convince the counsellor that the suggestion was wrong.

Self-reliance. Self-reliance may depend upon successes or failures of earlier attempts, the achievements by others, knowledge and support. Again, the patient assesses on a scale 0 to 10 his/her chances of success to quit smoking (or the same scale expressed in words). If the patient assesses his/her own chances above 0, the counsellor should ask why the patient does not choose a lower number than the one chosen, the intent being that the patient is inspired to soul-search for his/her ability to mobilize internal resources. The better this mobilization, the stronger the self-reliance. Even more "change talk" can be evoked by asking: "What would it take to further increase your chances?" The will and the ability to change behaviour are two different, but related aspects of motivation, which are not easily distinguishable. Some patients may find it easier to define what they do not want rather than admit to a low level of self-reliance. For others it may be the opposite ("I want to, but it won't work!"). It is important that the counsellor is able to understand what the patient actually means.

Evidence of efficacy

A Cochrane review from 2010 identified 14 studies published between 1997 and 2008, involving over 10,000 smokers. Trials were conducted in one to four sessions, with the duration of each session ranging from 15 to 45 minutes. All but two of the trials used supportive telephone contacts, and supplemented the counselling with self-help materials. MI was generally compared with brief advice or usual care in the trials. Interventions were delivered by primary care physicians, hospital clinicians, nurses or counsellors. A meta-analysis of MI versus brief advice or usual care yielded a modest but significant increase in quitting (RR 1.27; 95% CI 1.14 to 1.42). Sub-group analyses suggested that MI was effective when delivered by primary care physicians (RR 3.49; 95% CI 1.53 to 7.94) and by counsellors (RR 1.27; 95% CI 1.12 to 1.43), and when it was conducted in longer sessions (more than 20 minutes per session) (RR 1.31; 95% CI 1.16 to 1.49). Multiple session treatments may be slightly

more effective than single sessions, but both regimens produced positive outcomes. Evidence is unclear at present concerning the optimal number of follow-up calls.

A review found that motivational interviewing seems to be effective when given by general practitioners and by trained counsellors. Longer sessions (more than 20 minutes per session) were more effective than shorter ones. Two or more sessions of treatment appeared to be marginally more successful than a single session treatment, but both delivered successful outcomes. The results should be interpreted with caution, due to variations in how the treatment was delivered, what it included and the completeness of the evidence.

Scientific evidence is lacking for the rapid engagement method, but clinicians report that the method is useful even in a busy practice and that it makes discussions about behaviour change much more relaxed.

Recommendations

- Motivational interviewing or its variants, widely used to help people stop smoking, is a counselling technique for helping people to explore and resolve their uncertainties about changing their behaviour. MI seeks to avoid an aggressive or confrontational approach and tries to steer people towards choosing to change their behaviour, and to encourage their self-belief.
- The evidence for the value of follow-up telephone support after MI was unclear.

References

1 Lai DTC, Cahill K, Qin Y, Tang JL. Motivational interviewing for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD006936. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006936.pub2

2 Miller, W.R., and Rollnick, S. Motivational Interviewing: Preparing People for Change, 2d ed. New York: Guilford Press. 2002

3 Spanou C, Simpson SA, Hood K, Edwards A, Cohen D, Rollnick S, Carter B, McCambridge J, Moore L, Randell E, Pickles T, Smith C, Lane C, Wood F, Thornton H, Butler CC. Preventing disease through opportunistic, rapid engagement by primary care teams using behaviour change counselling (PRE-EMPT): protocol for a general practice-based cluster randomised trial. BMC Fam Pract. 2010 Sep 21;11:69

4.3.3. Individual cognitive-behavioural therapy (CBT)

Principles of CBT

The principles of CBT are as follows: initiating a collaboration relationship between doctor and patient; avoiding conflicts; active listening – which refers to re-phrasing what the patient says; valuing success; creating positive appreciation skills concerning the benefits of quitting smoking.

This treatment aims at changing the individuals' inadaptable behaviours and at de-conditioning and moving towards adapted behaviours. Using CBT in smoking cessation centres helps smokers learn to take note of their smoking behaviour and evaluate themselves, given that smoking is a learned behaviour, subsequently maintained through a dependence constantly influenced by environment stimuli[1]. This technique developed from treatments for anxiety and depression (so-called cognitive behavioural therapy) attempts to change habitual ways of thinking and feeling about smoking and oneself and provides encouragement and advice on ways of minimizing and managing the desire to smoke[2].

Efficacy of CBT

There is a consistent relationship between more intensive counselling (with respect to both the duration and number of counselling sessions) and abstinence from smoking. According to a meta-analysis of 35 randomized trials, six-month abstinence rates increased significantly with minutes of total counselling contact: about 14% for 1 to 3 minutes of counselling, 19% for 4 to 30 minutes of counselling, and 27% for 31 to 90 minutes of counselling, versus 11% for no counselling. (Some studies included pharmacotherapy across all counselling conditions, so medication also contributed to these success rates.) Successful counselling boosts the motivation to quit by personalizing the costs and risks of the patient's tobacco use (by tying it to the patient's health, economic status, and family situation). Counselling also provides an opportunity to warn the patient about obstacles or hurdles to quitting and encourages the patient to plan to use coping strategies for avoiding and resisting the need to smoke. The clinician should assess and counsel the patient regarding factors that pose especially great challenges to quitting, such as living with a smoker, excessive alcohol use, and fear of gaining weight. Counselling should be empathic and supportive, not confrontational[1]. Counselling remains underused, and a key goal is to increase its use in clinical practice either in person or through referral to a telephone quit line[3].

Meta-analysis of 64 studies about the effectiveness and the estimated abstinence rates for various types of counselling and behavioural therapies showed statistically significant increases in abstinence rates compared to no contact in the following categories of counselling: (1) providing practical

counselling, such as problem-solving/skills training/stress management; (2) providing support during a smoker's direct contact with a clinician (intra treatment social support); (3) intervening to increase social support in the smoker's environment (extra treatment social support); and (4) using aversive smoking procedures (rapid smoking, rapid puffing)[1].

Table 11: Common elements of practical counselling (problem-solving/skills-training)[4]

TREATMENT COMPONENT	EXAMPLES
Recognize danger situations – Identify events, internal states or activities that increase the risk of smoking or of relapse.	Negative effect and stress. Being around other tobacco users. Drinking alcohol. Experiencing urge to smoke. Smoking cues and availability of cigarettes.
Develop coping skills – Identify and practice coping or problem-solving skills. Typically, these skills are intended to cope with danger situations.	Learn to anticipate and avoid temptation and how to trigger situations. Learn cognitive strategies that will reduce negative moods. Accomplish lifestyle changes that may reduce stress, improve quality of life, and reduce exposure to smoking cues. Learn cognitive and behavioural activities to cope with smoking urges (e.g. distracting attention; changing routines).
Provide basic information – Provide basic information about smoking and successful quitting.	The fact that any smoking (even a single puff) increases the likelihood of a full relapse. Withdrawal symptoms typically peak within 1-2 weeks after quitting, but may persist for months. These symptoms include negative mood, urges to smoke, and difficulty concentrating. The addictive nature of smoking.

Through CBT the smoker will learn practical techniques for dealing with smoking-inciting situations and will benefit from psychological and behavioural support for encouraging him/her to stop smoking completely. Data show that the same standard counselling can rarely be applied to all patients; some cognitive-behavioural therapy models are associated to a certain therapeutic strategy; in the majority

of studies in this field, there is no correlation with any control group[5].
Cognitive-behavioural therapy contributes to an increased abstinence ratio by evaluating the motivation for quitting smoking, by building communication skills and a doctor-patient dialogue based on respect and understanding and by evaluation of nicotine dependence (analysis of the smoking appetite, explaining the tobacco dependence concept). Most smokers do not have accurate knowledge about what happens in their brains when they smoke and the reasons why it is difficult to quit smoking, even if they are highly motivated. A discussion with a specialist about the effects of nicotine on the brain and the way nicotine dependence manifests itself can spectacularly increase the patient's initiative towards giving up smoking[6 7 8]. The intervention also allows in-depth analysis of concerns and fears related to the smoking cessation process and create an opportunity for agreeing with the patient on the adequate therapeutic strategy.

How to manage behavioural smoking addiction

Successful interventions to quit tobacco need to tackle an interacting constellation of factors – personal, family, socio-economic, pharmacological and behavioural – that sustain use and can act as major barriers to cessation. Sometimes, if the complexity of this condition is not taken into account, the patient will struggle to achieve long-term abstinence and this process extends over years or decades. So, besides both the physical and psychological addiction, the behavioural addiction must also be addressed, as in some smokers this aspect may seriously intervene.

It is now unanimously recognized that cigarette smoking is a primary manifestation of nicotine addiction and that smokers have individually characteristic preferences for their level of nicotine intake, as they regulate their own way of puffing and inhaling to achieve their desired nicotine dose.

Recommendations

- CBT must be included in planning all types of medical interventions for smoking cessation[1] as an efficient method, which contributes to increasing the smoking cessation success ratio (level of evidence B).

- Two types of counselling and behavioural therapies result in higher abstinence rates: (1) providing smokers with practical counselling (problem solving skills/skills training) and (2) providing support and encouragement as part of treatment (level of evidence B.
- These counselling elements should be included in smoking cessation interventions (level of evidence B).

References

1 *Zhu SH, Melcer T, Sun J, Rosbrook B, Pierce JP. Smoking cessation with and without assistance: a population-based analysis. Am J Prev Med 2000;18:305311*

2 *West R., New Approaches to Smoking Cessation, http://www.ttmed.com/respiratory/print.cfm? ID_Dis=8&ID_Cou=23&ID_Art=1598 16/09/2006*

3 *Fiore M.C., Baker T.B., Treating Smokers in the Health Care Setting, N Engl J Med 2011;365:1222-31*

4 *Fiore M. C.,Tobacco Use and Dependence: A 2011 Update of Treatments CME/CE, http://www.medscape.org/viewarticle/757167*

5 *Trofor A., Mihaltan F., Mihaicuta S., Pop M., Todea D et.al., Romanian Society of Pulmonologists Smoking Cessation and Smoker's Assistance Guidelines (GREFA), 2-nd ed. – Tehnopress Iași, 2010, www.srp.ro*

6 *Martinet Y., Bohadana A., Wirth N., Spinosa A., Le traitement de la dependence au tabac, Guide Pratique 2009*

7 *Raw M, McNeill A, West R. Smoking cessation guidelines for health professionals: a guide to effective smoking cessation interventions for the health care system, Thorax 1998;53:Suppl 5:S1S19*

8 *NICE advice on the best way to quit smoking February 2008National Institute for Clinical and Health Excellence, www.nice.org.uk*

4.3.4. Psychological support for smoking cessation

Besides pharmacological treatment and counselling, the patient who wants to stop smoking can benefit from psychological assistance, as needed. Every smoker should be advised to make his or her own effort to quit. If this effort fails, or if the smoker feels unable to quit without help, then psychotherapy techniques must intervene in supporting stopping smoking.

The recommended elements of treatment are derived from behavioural therapy; there is inadequate evidence to support psycho-dynamically oriented treatments, because of the lack of relevant controlled trials. Cessation programmes are based on the premises that psychological dependency arises by operant and classical conditioning, and that cognitive processes, own personal values, and the functionality of tobacco consumption play a major role in maintaining smoking behaviour. Such programmes combine psychological education and motivational techniques with behavioural-therapeutic elements. These interventions can be provided either by group therapy or in an individual therapeutic setting. In one popular model, a smoking cessation group of 6 to 12 patients undergoes treatment together in 6 to 10 sessions consisting of two 90 to 120 minute therapeutic units each[1].

Meta-analyses of the effect of psychological support have shown that such individual anti-smoking counselling is more effective than simple counselling (13.9% v. 10.8%, RR = 1.39, CI 1.24–1.57)[2]. Group therapy and individual counselling are the most effective types of treatment and are equally effective. Mean abstinence rates above 30% have been reported when at least eight counselling sessions are combined with pharmacotherapy support[1].

Psychological support is carried out in a systematized and standardized approach. It starts with an evaluation of the patient's psychological characteristics, preferably using the Anxiety and Depression Scale[5] and assists patients in comparatively evaluating benefits over disadvantages in a personalized manner, as well as the influence that their tobacco dependence will have on their own life perspectives (Table 12, Table 13).

Table 12: Patient analyzes himself/herself

The Tobacco dependence that I am suffering from, generates for me:	
short- and long-term advantages:	short- and long-term disadvantages:

Table 13: The patient predicts the influence of the tobacco dependence status upon the objectives he/she wants to achieve in life

Five years from now, I will be ……. years old	
What would I like to be and to do?	What will happen if I do not quit smoking?

Then, the content of the written analysis is discussed with specialists, concerning both advantages and disadvantages, in order to reveal the positive outcomes. Emphasis should be placed on positive achievements and it is recommended to support the patient's own self-confidence strongly.

An efficient smoking cessation strategy is then drawn up, through a doctor-patient collaborative process. The first step consists of agreeing on a quit day. As of that day on, the patient must not keep cigarettes in his/her pocket, bag, suitcase, at home, etc. This is necessary as we know scientific proofs reveal that the overwhelming need for smoking lasts seven minutes and then, even if the need for smoking still remains, it will manifest itself on more bearable levels. Since patients do not have any cigarettes at hand, until they can eventually get them, those seven minutes of extreme pressure pass and they may face this challenging situation from a more powerful position[1].

While the patient still smokes, but has also started pharmacological treatment, the following actions are recommended:

- announce to all friends, family etc. his/her initiative to give up smoking;
- write on a piece of paper the reasons why he/she wants to quit smoking, given the principle verba volant, scripta manent, and post this piece of paper in a place where it can be seen frequently – on the fridge door, in the bathroom, on the computer monitor etc.;
- think what he/she will optimally replace the smoking gesture with: this may be a glass of water, tea, coffee etc. – and drink it little by little; other tips may be also helpful to postpone smoking: using anti-stress balls, chewing gum or eating biscuits/carrots, etc.;
- define a support person – the person that he/she commits to contact by telephone before possibly relapsing to smoking;
- imagine a type of reaction for the situations when the desire to use tobacco appears: drink water, go for a walk etc.;
- change his/her daily life, habits or space when and where he/she used to smoke at other times[1 3 4].

Table 14: Common elements of intra-treatment supportive interventions

SUPPORTIVE TREATMENT COMPONENT	EXAMPLES
Encourage the patient in the quit attempt	• Note that effective tobacco dependence treatments are now available and that one-half of all people who ever smoked have now quit. • Communicate belief in patient's ability to quit.
Communicate caring and concern	• Ask how the patient feels about quitting. • Directly express concern and willingness to help as often as needed. • Ask about the patient's fears and ambivalence regarding quitting.
Encourage the patient to talk about the quitting process	Ask about: reasons the patient wants to quit for, concerns or worries about quitting, success achieved or difficulties encountered while quitting.

There is clear evidence that face-to-face sessions with someone providing support and guidance through the first few weeks of a quit attempt improves six-month continuous abstinence rates. There is also evidence that group-based psychological support is effective. There is no evidence, at this stage, to support any particular approach to psychological support, yet there is a lot of interest in the approach known as motivational interviewing, which involves attempting to establish a dialogue with the smokers so that they themselves come to generate motivation to quit and to remain quit[2].

Recommendation

- Psychological support for smoking cessation must be integrated in the medical treatment of the patient addicted to nicotine (level of evidence A).

References

1 *Batra A. Treatment of Tobacco dependence, Deutsches Ärzteblatt International | Dtsch Arztebl Int 2011; 108(33): 555–64)*

2 *Lancaster T, Stead LF: Individual behavioural counselling for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews: Reviews 2005, Issue 2. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd Chichester, UK DOI: 10.1002/14651858. CD001292.pub2*

3 *Sullivan et al., State of the Art Reviews: Smoking Cessation: A Review of Treatment Considerations, American Journal of Lifestyle Medicine, 2007; 1: 201213*

4 *Aubin H.J., Dupont P., Lagrue G. – How to quit smoking-recommendations, treatment methods, Tei Publishing House, Bucureşti 2003*

4.4. Combined counselling and medication treatments

Counselling and medication are effective when used by themselves, but the combination of counselling and medication is more effective than either used alone and increases abstinence rates[1 2]. The clinician providing medication does not need to be the clinician providing the counselling. It may be that a physician, a dentist, physician's assistant or nursing practitioner could prescribe medicines, and counselling could be provided by another tobacco treatment specialist (doctor, nurse, psychologist, quitlines worker etc.).

Adherence to combined treatment (both medication and counselling) is also an important factor to consider for smoking cessation success. It has been suggested that pharmacological and non-pharmacological approach complement each other and this is supported by a meta-analysis showing that behavioural therapy can improve people's skills in dealing with situations when they would normally smoke, while pharmacotherapy eases physiological withdrawal symptoms. Furthermore, pharmacotherapy helps patients overcome the acute phase of quitting, when withdrawal symptoms are most intense, while behavioural therapy provides coping mechanisms to maintain long-term abstinence. Therefore, combining both treatments may improve compliance with each method[1].

A review of 18 studies about the comparative efficacy of such therapies revealed that therapeutic efficiency is considerably increased when using combination formula. The efficiency increased in direct proportion with the intensity of counselling; the maximum benefit occurred when eight counselling sessions took place, both face-to-face and by telephone.

Meta-analysis of nine studies in 2008 indicated that providing medication in addition to counselling significantly increases treatment outcomes (22.1% when medication is added to counselling v. 14.6% when medication alone)[1]. In an open-label, pragmatic, randomized trial that compared two models of a pharmacist-led behavioural intervention [Group A (3-sessions) v. Group B (1-session)] combined with five weeks of NRT, delivered in 98 pharmacies in Ontario, Canada, cessation outcomes were higher among participants completing three intervention sessions compared to one session[3].

Recommendations

- The combination of counselling and medication is more effective for smoking cessation than either medication or counselling alone. Therefore, whenever feasible and appropriate, both counselling and medication should be provided to patients trying to quit smoking (level of evidence A).
- There is a strong relationship between the number of sessions of counselling when it is combined with medication and the likelihood of successful smoking abstinence. Therefore, to the extent

possible, clinicians should provide multiple counselling sessions, in addition to medication, to their patients who are trying to quit smoking (level of evidence A)[4].

References

1 *Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: 2008 Update, Clinical Practice Guideline. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services. Public Health Service. May 2008*

2 *Hurt R.D., Ebbert J.O., Hays J.T., McFadden D.D., Treating Tobacco dependence in a Medical Setting, CA Cancer J Clin 2009; 59:314-326, doi: 10.3322/caac.2009*

3 *Costello MJ, Sproule B, Victor JC, Leatherdale ST, Zawertailo L, Selby P., Effectiveness of pharmacist counselling combined with nicotine replacement therapy: a pragmatic randomized trial with 6,987 smokers, Cancer Causes Control. 2011 Feb;22(2):167-80. Epub 2010 Dec 12*

4 *Fiore M.C. and col. Quick Reference Guide for Clinicians 2008 Update: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence, U.S.Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service*

4.5 Individualized therapeutic schemes

In clinical practice, we base our decision-making for medication selection and dosage on the published literature as well as on our clinical experience. Nowadays, it has been recognized that there are limitations to standard-dose or fixed-dose regimens with most drugs used in clinical smoking cessation. As a result, clinicians should use their skills and knowledge to individualize drug dosing for patients being treated for tobacco use and dependence.

Opportunities exist to increase smoking abstinence rates and to reduce withdrawal symptoms by using combinations of pharmacotherapies that have proved effective as monotherapies.

According to the 2008 US Guidelines, certain combinations of first-line medications are more effective than monotherapy, such as: long-term (i.e. greater than 14 weeks) nicotine patch combined with nicotine gum or nicotine nasal spray, nicotine patch plus nicotine vapour inhaler, and nicotine patch plus bupropion SR. Whether the superiority of combination therapy is because of the use of two types of delivery systems or is due to the fact that two delivery systems tend to produce higher blood nicotine levels remains unclear. Combination pharmacotherapy or higher-dose NRT appears to relieve nicotine withdrawal symptoms more effectively, especially in more dependent smokers[1].

In real life, specialists often combine medications. For patients with more severe tobacco dependence, combination therapy and often use of three or more products simultaneously are suitable. For patients with a partial response to the initial medication, further tailoring of the medication regimen may be necessary to reach abstinence. For example, if a patient has reduced smoking using varenicline at a dose of 1 mg twice daily and has tolerated the medication, the dose may be increased to 1 mg taken three times daily. Another situation requiring creativity is a smoker who has stopped smoking using nicotine patch therapy and a short-acting NRT, but notices increased withdrawal symptoms in the early evening. Adding a 14 mg patch in the late afternoon may decrease evening withdrawal[2 3].

In order to better address withdrawal symptoms poorly controlled during the initiation phase of the treatment with varenicline, Hurt et al. used nicotine patch therapy in a residential treatment programme for smokers treated with varenicline, because patients had to stop smoking at programme inclusion and as varenicline requires several days to reach steady-state concentrations[4].

4.5.1 Combination of pharmacological therapies

4.5.1.1 General principles of combination pharmacotherapy

Two major types of combination pharmacotherapy have been evaluated for increasing smoking abstinence rates among cigarette smokers: (1) therapy using different NRTs and different pharmacokinetic profiles (e.g. nicotine patch and nicotine gum); or (2) therapy using two drugs that have different mechanisms of action, such as bupropion SR and NRT.

Combination therapy using two different drugs provides the opportunity to gain therapeutic synergism by using medications with distinct mechanisms of action or different therapeutic properties. For example, the combination of varenicline and bupropion SR combines the efficacy of varenicline with the ability of bupropion SR to reduce post-cessation weight gain. Also, combining different forms of NRT provides a stable baseline nicotine level from the sustained release NRT (i.e. nicotine patch) with the opportunity for intermittent increases in the nicotine level from immediate release NRT (nicotine gum, lozenge, inhaler or nasal spray) in response to withdrawal symptoms.

Combination pharmacotherapy remains controversial and underutilized because only the combination of bupropion SR and nicotine patch has been approved by the FDA for smoking cessation[2].

4.5.1.2 Combination of nicotine replacement therapy (NRT)

The two types of combination NRTs that have been described are sequential and concurrent. Sequential therapy can theoretically provide initial stable nicotine dosing to achieve abstinence (i.e. nicotine patch) and then intermittent ad lib dosing to prevent relapse. However, little data exists to support sequential therapy.

Relatively more data exists regarding the simultaneous use of multiple NRTs (i.e. concurrent therapy). This formula allows for the delivery of nicotine passively, with long-acting NRT (i.e. nicotine patch) and for the active ad lib administration of short-acting NRT (i.e. gum, lozenge, inhaler and nasal spray). Combination provides the advantages of higher treatment adherence with the nicotine patch[5] and empowering smokers to deal with acute cravings and withdrawal symptoms through self-administration of short-acting NRT.

NRT + paroxetine
In a double-blind trial Killen et al. examined the efficacy of a smoking cessation treatment that combined nicotine replacement therapy via a transdermal system with the anti-depressant paroxetine.

Smokers were randomly assigned to one of the three groups: transdermal system and placebo, transdermal system and 20 mg of paroxetine, and transdermal system and 40 mg of paroxetine. Transdermal treatment was provided for eight weeks; paroxetine or placebo was provided for nine weeks. Abstinence rates for all participants at follow-up were not significantly different, but a sub-group analysis of adherent patients resulted in statistically significant differences between the paroxetine groups and the control group at week 4[6].

Nicotine patch + nicotine oral
The patch is administered daily and it can also be used in combination with nicotine gum, as a crisis/relief medication. The gum can be administered daily or intermittently.

Studies evaluating the combination of nicotine patch and nicotine gum have demonstrated that the combination is superior to monotherapy for increasing smoking abstinence rates at 12 and 24 weeks[7][8]. Outcomes of the combination therapy showed a tobacco abstinence ratio of 34% compared to only 24% in the case of 12-week monotherapy using nicotine patch, respectively 28% in the combination group compared to 15% in the 24-week nicotine patch monotherapy group[9]. Treatments that combine nicotine gum and patch and last more than three to six months should be considered for patients with a severe and/or prolonged nicotine withdrawal syndrome, for whom no other therapeutic solutions exist[10].

Nicotine patch + nicotine spray
Combination therapy using the nicotine patch and nasal spray investigated in an open-label trial of 1384 smokers randomized to nicotine patch therapy and nasal spray or either therapy alone, was associated with significantly higher smoking abstinence rates at 6 weeks compared with either monotherapy[11]. In a placebo-controlled trial, the nicotine patch and nicotine nasal spray were superior to nicotine patch and placebo nasal spray at both short (6 weeks and 3 months) and long-term (12 months) follow-up[12].

Nicotine patch + nicotine inhaler
Significantly higher smoking abstinence rates were observed with the nicotine patch and inhaler at 6 and 12 weeks compared to the inhaler alone, in a placebo-controlled randomized trial on 400 subjects. Patients were assigned as group 1 (n=200) receiving inhaler plus patch (delivering 15 mg of nicotine per 16 hours) for 6 weeks, then inhaler plus placebo patch for 6 weeks, then inhaler alone for 14 weeks and group 2 (n=200) receiving nicotine inhaler plus placebo patch for 12 weeks, then inhaler for 14 weeks[13].

In general, combination NRT is well tolerated and side effects are consistent with the anticipated side effects of each agent alone[2].

Nicotine patch + bupropion

Bupropion in combination with nicotine patch is more efficient than patch only, because they have different mechanisms of acting[6]. Start with bupropion in standard doses in the first two weeks and add the nicotine patch as of the date set for quit day. Bupropion will be administered in total for 7 to 12 weeks. Optimal duration for nicotine patch treatment in combined formula is 3 to 6 months[10].

In a four-group, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, the abstinence rate at 12 months was 35.5% for the combination therapy (nicotine patch and bupropion), compared to 30.3% for bupropion alone, 16.4% for nicotine patch alone and 15.6% for placebo[10]. Jorenby et al. randomly assigned participants to one of three groups: bupropion only, nicotine patch only, or both bupropion and nicotine patch. Participants in the control group received placebo pills and a placebo patch. The biochemically confirmed abstinence rates at 12 months were15.6% in the placebo group, 16.4% in the nicotine patch group, 30.3% in the bupropion-only group (P _ 0.001), and 35.5% in the group given both (P _ 0.001). Abstinence rates were higher with combination therapy than with bupropion alone, but the difference was not statistically significant[14].

In general, literature suggests that combination therapy with bupropion SR and NRT increases short-term abstinence rates. The USPSH Guideline meta-analysis suggests that a non-significant trend exists for bupropion SR and nicotine patch to increase long-term abstinence rates (≥ 6 months) compared with nicotine patch alone [odds ratio (OR) 1.3; 95% CI: 1.0-1.8][10].

NRT + bupropion

A placebo-controlled study evaluated the association of bupropion SR (300 mg) to nicotine patch (21 mg), nicotine gum (2 mg), and cognitive behavioural therapy in 51 patients. Adding bupropion SR increased the primary outcome of smoking reduction (≥ 50%) at weeks 12 and 24 and continuous smoking abstinence at week 8[15].

In a study involving 1700 smokers, combination therapy with bupropion SR and nicotine inhaler was observed to be superior to either agent alone[16].

In a large effectiveness trial in primary care, bupropion SR and lozenge was observed to be superior to all monotherapies (i.e. lozenge, patch, bupropion SR)[17].

Nortriptyline + NRT

A meta-analysis of studies evaluating nortriptyline and NRT compared to NRT suggests that there is a non-significant trend towards increased smoking abstinence with combination therapy (OR 1.29; 95% CI: 0.97-1.72)[18].

Varenicline + NRT

Based on data from a pharmacokinetic study[19], Ebbert et al.[20] Put forward the hypothesis that: (1) varenicline does not completely saturate nicotinic acetylcholine receptors leading to an incomplete “reward” response and an incomplete blockade of continuing smoking reinforcement; (2) varenicline incompletely replaces the dopaminergic effect of smoking, leading to a continued craving to smoke. The authors therefore considered that some smokers may need NRT in addition to varenicline to reduce withdrawal and urges to smoke and to allow smokers to achieve complete abstinence. As they have extensive experience with combination therapy using varenicline and NRT in an eight-day residential (in-patient) treatment programme, at the Nicotine Dependence Center (NDC) in the Mayo Clinic, authors advise using NRT to provide withdrawal symptom relief, as smokers are being titrated up on varenicline. No increase in adverse effects was observed compared to smokers who were treated in the same programme, prior to the release of varenicline. However, these researchers suggest results from this study may not apply to other patient populations and should be interpreted with caution.

A recently published clinical trial examined why smokers receiving combination medication for smoking cessation are more likely to quit smoking than are those who receive either single agent (monotherapy) or placebo. Data collected from 1504 current smokers randomized to one of six cessation pharmacotherapy conditions (placebo, nicotine patch, nicotine lozenge, bupropion nicotine patch and nicotine lozenge, and bupropion and nicotine lozenge) suggested that the combination treatments produced higher abstinence rates than the monotherapies because of greater suppression of withdrawal, craving and smoking expectations[21].

Loh, Piper et al. answered the question whether combination pharmacotherapy should be used routinely with smokers or if some types of smokers show little or no benefit from combination pharmacotherapy versus monotherapy. They concluded: combination pharmacotherapy was generally more effective than monotherapy, except in one group of smokers (those with low nicotine dependence) who did not show greater benefit from using combination pharmacotherapy. Use of monotherapy with these smokers might be justified considering the expense and the side effects of combined pharmacotherapy[22].

Recommendations

- Certain combinations of first-line medications have been shown to be effective as smoking cessation treatments but the number and variety of articles analyzed was sufficient to assess the effectiveness of five combinations of medications relative to placebo (level of evidence B). Only the patch and bupropion combination has been approved by FDA for smoking cessation[23].

- Clinicians may therefore consider using these combinations of medications with their patients who are willing to quit.

- Effective combination medications are:
  - long-term (> 14 weeks) nicotine patch and other NRT (gum, spray) (level of evidence A);
  - nicotine patch and nicotine inhaler (level of evidence B).;
  - nicotine patch and bupropion SR (level of evidence A).

Varenicline + bupropion SR

Because varenicline and bupropion have different mechanisms of action, they are sometimes used in combination, particularly in smokers who have previously stopped smoking using bupropion monotherapy, but struggled during the process. A pilot study of this combination demonstrated excellent efficacy and high tolerance, suggesting that a combination of varenicline and bupropion SR may be effective for increasing smoking abstinence rates above rates observed using monotherapy[2].

4.5.2 Available evidence on other interventions to support tobacco cessation

Numerous approaches exist to support tobacco cessation with yet unproven effectiveness based on vaccines, drugs and non-pharmaceutical factors. Some are found in the target audiences and appear exotic. For example, some Russian adolescents believe that smoking cigarettes soaked in milk and dried or cigarettes with the addition of cut nails are helpful for quitting.

Interventions subject to scientific research, which have so far not yielded positive conclusive evidence for at least 6 months follow-up from the beginning of treatment, include the following:

Vaccines

Three anti-nicotine vaccines are currently under clinical evaluation[24].
Review of available five phase I/II clinical trials using vaccines against nicotine found an increase in

quit rates only in small groups of smokers with particularly high antibody titres. A conclusion was drawn that shortcomings may exist in underlying animal models of addiction and there is a need to better understand the processes contributing to addiction[25].

In November 2011 Selecta Biosciences initiated a phase 1 clinical study of SEL-068, a first-in-class synthetic nicotine vaccine for smoking cessation and relapse prevention[26]. In the Russian Federation branch 000 Selecta (RUS) is involved.

Drugs

Review of randomized trials of silver acetate marketed for smoking cessation found lack of effect[27].

Review of randomized long-term trials to assess effects of Nicobrevin, a proprietary product marketed as an aid to smoking cessation, did not yield any evidence that Nicobrevin can aid smoking cessation[28].

Review of trials of Lobeline, a partial nicotine agonist, used in commercially available preparations to support smoking cessation did not find any positive evidence that Lobeline can aid long-term smoking cessation[29].

Review of the effectiveness of anxiolytic pharmacotherapy with drugs such as diazepam, doxepin, meprobamate, ondansetron, and beta-blockers metoprolol, oxprenolol and propanolol in aiding long-term smoking cessation did not find consistent evidence of any positive effect, although a possible effect was not excluded[30].

Review of available evidence on the efficacy of opioid antagonists, including naloxone and naltrexone in promoting long-term smoking cessation did not produce any definite results and suggested the need for new and more extensive trials[31].

Review of trials using nicotine antagonist mecamylamine, also in combination with NRT showed the need to confirm available evidence in more extensive studies[32].

In a preliminary proof-of-concept study evaluating gabapentin for the treatment of tobacco dependence it was found, albeit not definitively, that gabapentin administered at the usual dosage regimen holds little promise for the treatment of tobacco dependence[33].

Review of three trials to determine whether selective CB1 receptor antagonists (currently rimonabant and taranabant) increase the number of people stopping smoking, and to assess their effects on weight change depending on cessation success, found some positive evidence, however development of these drugs was discontinued by the manufacturers in 2008[34].

In a randomized trial of glucose tablets to aid smoking cessation, which aimed to assess whether glucose tablets improve six-month continuous abstinence rates compared with low-calorie placebo tablets, no significant effect of glucose tablets over sweet tasting tablets was detected. However, researchers claimed that the possibility of an effect as an adjunct to NRT or bupropion deserves studying[35].

Non-pharmaceutical interventions

Review of available 57 articles on partner involvement as a means to attain long-term effect in tobacco use cessation did not reach any definite conclusions and recommended more research[36].

Review of 17 studies of competitions, material or financial incentives to reinforce smoking cessation did not find definite evidence on enhancing long-term cessation rates[37].

Review of trials of exercise interventions for smoking cessation found that only one of the 15 trials reviewed showed positive impact of exercise in a year-long follow up. Other reviewed trials had shortcomings, so more research of exercise interventions was recommended[38].

Review of 11 randomized controlled trials of efficacy of hypnotherapy promoted as a method for aiding smoking cessation found conflicting results and did not provide evidence that hypnotherapy could be as effective as counselling treatment[39].

Review of 24 reports of randomized trials on the effectiveness of acupuncture and related techniques of acupressure, laser therapy and electrostimulation promoted as treatments for smoking cessation did not find consistent evidence of effectiveness of these interventions for smoking cessation, however no firm conclusions were drawn and further research using frequent or continuous stimulation was recommended[40].

Review of 25 trials to determine the efficacy of rapid smoking and other aversive methods of smoking cessation and to ascertain possible dose-response effects depending on the level of aversive stimulation did not find sufficient evidence to determine the efficacy of rapid smoking, or whether there is a dose-response to aversive stimulation[41].
The efficacy of non-conventional therapies, such as hypnosis, acupuncture, phytotherapy, homeotherapy, has not been demonstrated properly and such therapies are not recommended by experts. However, as the safety of such procedures is generally good, if a patient requests such a non-conventional therapy, the health professional may discourage it, but it is advisable not to prohibit it, due to the danger that the smoker may renounce conventional medicine. A combination of conventional and non-conventional medicine is in most cases better than using non-conventional medicine alone.

4.5.3 Recommendations for prolonging treatment duration

In some patients, a longer treatment duration than that usually recommended has proven beneficial.

Prolonged nicotine substitution treatment

Fears concerning the potential addiction caused by prolonged treatment with nicotine substitutes are not justified. On the contrary, prolonging the duration of such therapy may prove opportune for health, as premature relapses are often described in any smoking cessation attempt.

Studies have shown higher abstinence rates when using nicotine gum for long-term compared to short-term cure and 15% to 20% abstinence among those who used nicotine gum for ≥ 12 months[10]. Lung Health Study found that about one-third of the long-term COPD abstinent have used nicotine gum up to 12 months (and some even up to five years), without serious adverse effects reports[10].

In an unstratified small block-randomization scheme, 568 participants were randomly assigned to 21 mg nicotine patch for 8 weeks and to placebo for 16 weeks or to extended therapy (21 mg nicotine patch for 24 weeks). Nicotine patch for 24 weeks increased biochemically confirmed point-prevalence abstinence and continuous abstinence at week 24, reduced the relapse risk and raised the likelihood of recovery to abstinence after a lapse, compared with 8 weeks of NRT patch[42].

Nicotine gum and nicotine patch can be administered for more than six months, with good results, especially on those patients who report prolonged withdrawal syndrome.

The FDA has approved nicotine replacement therapy administered for more than six months, since it has no risks[10].
Using nicotine gum ensures better weight control after stopping smoking. There is a correlation between the dose of pharmaceutical nicotine administered and weight gain (the bigger the dose of nicotine in substitutes, the lower the weight gain)[10].

Few persons can really become addicted to nicotine substitution products. But, indeed, some former smokers may continue to use them for up to one year or even longer, because they are afraid of failing and returning to smoking[10]. A total of 402 participants completed a 12-week treatment programme that included group counselling, NRT and bupropion. Participants, independent of smoking status, were then assigned randomly to: (1) standard treatment (ST; no further treatment); (2) extended NRT (E-NRT; 40 weeks of nicotine gum availability); (3) extended cognitive behavioural therapy (E-CBT; 11 cognitive behavioural sessions over a 40-week period); or (4) E-CBT plus E-NRT (E-combined; 11 cognitive behavioural sessions plus 40 weeks of nicotine gum availability). The authors agreed on the benefits of extended treatments that can produce high and stable abstinence rates[43].

Prolonged treatment with varenicline

A longer than 12-week period of treatment with varenicline is safe, well tolerated and ensures a higher long-term abstinence rate, considerably reducing relapsing risk.

Varenicline can be administered as an efficient medication to treat nicotine dependence, for 24 weeks, with good tolerance, especially on those patients whose appetite for smoking returns after the first 12 weeks of treatment. Varenicline is the first drug that has proven to have a significant long-term effect against relapsing. According to Tonstad et al., 70.6% of the varenicline group quit smoking in weeks 13-24, compared to 49.8% in the placebo group; respectively 44% v. 37.1% subjects were abstinent in weeks 25-52[44].

Prolonged treatment with bupropion

The duration of treatment with bupropion can be prolonged over the 7-9 week standard cure, with a good efficiency on both abstinence rates at the end of treatment and in follow-up, but also on relapse prevention. In a randomized, placebo-controlled study, in which 300 mg bupropion was administered for seven weeks in 784 healthy smokers, followed by a 45-week additional cure of bupropion v. placebo, a good abstinence ratio was found after 52 weeks in the bupropion group (55.1%) v. 42.3% in the placebo group. This proportion remained the same during follow-up, at 78 weeks (47.7% in the bupropion group v. 37.7% in the placebo group, p=0.034), but it became insignificant at the 104-week end of study visit (41.6% for bupropion group v. 40.0% for placebo group). Relapses occurred on average at 156 days for the bupropion group versus 65 days for the placebo group (p=0.021), a fact which is undeniably in favour of longer bupropion treatment courses[45].

Cox et al.[46] randomized abstinent smokers treated with bupropion for seven weeks to either continued bupropion for one year or to placebo. Bupropion produced a higher abstinence rate at the end of treatment when compared to placebo, but no differences at one-year follow-up. Killen et al.[47] treated smokers for 12 weeks with an open-label bupropion, nicotine patch and weekly relapse prevention training. All participants were then offered four relapse prevention sessions and continued on either active or placebo bupropion for another 14 weeks. There were no differences in abstinence rates between conditions at 1 year.

When appropriate, pharmacological treatment could be prolonged for periods longer than is usually recommended. It is recognized that the greatest effects on abstinence rates are due to long-term nicotine patch therapy and ad libitum other NRT[1].

References

1 *Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: 2008 Update, Clinical Practice Guideline. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services. Public Health Service. May 2008*

2 *Ebbert J.O., Hays J.T., D. Hurt, Combination Pharmacotherapy for Stopping Smoking: What Advantages Does it Offer? Drugs. 2010 April 16; 70(6): 643–650. doi:10.2165/11536100-000000000-00000*

3 *Japuntich SJ, Piper ME, Leventhal AM, Bolt DM, Baker TB. The effect of five smoking cessation pharmacotherapies on smoking cessation milestones, J.Consult.Clin. Psychol., 2011, Feb, 79(1), 34-42*

4 *Hurt R.D., Ebbert J.O., Hays J.T., McFadden D.D., Treating Tobacco dependence in a Medical Setting, CA Cancer J Clin 2009; 59:314-326, doi: 10.3322/caac.2009*

5 *Hajek P, West R, Foulds J, Nilsson F, Burrows S, Meadow A. Randomized comparative trial of nicotine polacrilex, a transdermal patch, nasal spray, and an inhaler. Arch Intern Med. 1999; 159:2033–8. [PubMed: 10510989]*

6 *Killen JD, Fortmann SP, Schatzberg AF, Hayward C, Sussman L, Rothman M, et al. Nicotine patch and paroxetine for smoking cessation, J Consult Clin Psychol. 2000;68:883-9*

7 *Puska P, Korhonen H, Vartiainer E, Urjanheimo E-L, Gustavsson G, Westin A. Combined use of nicotine patch and gum compared with gum alone in smoking cessation: a clinical trial in North Karelia, Tob Control. 1995; 4:231–5*

8 *Kornitzer M, Boutsen M, Dramaix M, Thijs J, Gustavsson G. Combined use of nicotine patch and gum in smoking cessation: a placebo-controlled clinical trial. Prev Med. 1995; 24(1):41–7. [PubMed: 7740014]*

9 *Kornitzer, M, Boutsen, M, Dramaix, M, et al Combined use of nicotine patch and gum in smoking cessation: a placebo controlled clinical trial. Prev Med 1995;24,4147*

10 *Trofor A., Mihaltan F., Mihaicuta S., Pop M., Todea D et.al., Romanian Society of Pulmonologists Smoking Cessation and Smoker's Assistance Guidelines (GREFA), 2-nd ed. – Tehnopress Iași, 2010, www.srp.ro*

11 *Croghan GA, Sloan JA, Croghan IT, Novotny P, Hurt RD, DeKrey WL, et al. Comparison of nicotine patch alone versus nicotine nasal spray alone versus a combination for treating smokers: a minimal intervention, randomized multicenter trial in a nonspecialized setting, Nicotine Tob Res. Apr; 2003 5(2):181–7. [PubMed: 12745490]*

12 *Blondal T, Gudmundsson LJ, Olafsdottir I, Gustavsson G, Westin A. Nicotine nasal spray with nicotine patch for smoking cessation: randomized trial with six year follow up, Br Med J. 1999; 318:285–8. [PubMed: 9924052]*

13 *Bohadana A., Nilsson F., Rasmussen T., Martinet Y., Nicotine Inhaler and Nicotine Patch as a Combination Therapy for Smoking Cessation, Arch Intern Med. 2000;160:3128-3134*

14 *Jorenby DE, Leischow SJ, Nides MA, Rennard SI, Johnston JA, Hughes AR, et al. A controlled trial of sustained-release Bupropion, a nicotine patch, or both for smoking cessation. N Engl J Med. 1999;340:685-91*

15 *Evins AE, Cather C, Culhane MA, Birnbaum A, Horowitz J, Hsieh E, et al. A 12-week doubleblind, placebo-controlled study of Bupropion sr added to high-dose dual nicotine replacement therapy for smoking cessation or reduction in schizophrenia, J Clin Psychopharmacol. Aug; 2007 27(4):380–6. [PubMed: 17632223]*

16 *Croghan IT, Hurt RD, Dakhil SR, Croghan GA, Sloan JA, Novotny PJ, et al. Randomized comparison of a nicotine inhaler and Bupropion for smoking cessation and relapse prevention, Mayo Clin Proc. Feb; 2007 82(2):186–95. [PubMed: 17290726]*

17 *Smith SS, McCarthy DE, Japuntich SJ, Christiansen B, Piper ME, Jorenby DE, et al. Comparative effectiveness of 5 smoking cessation pharmacotherapies in primary care clinics, Arch Intern Med. Dec 14; 2009 169(22):2148–55. [PubMed: 20008701]*

18 *Hughes J, Stead L, Lancaster T. Antidepressants for smoking cessation, Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2007; 1:CD000031. [PubMed: 17253443]*

19 *Faessel HM, Gibbs MA, Clark DJ, Rohrbacher K, Stolar M, Burstein AH. Multiple-dose pharmacokinetics of the selective nicotinic receptor partial agonist, Varenicline, in healthy smokers, J Clin Pharmacol. Dec; 2006 46(12):1439–48. [PubMed: 17101743]*

20 *Ebbert JO, Burke MV, Hays JT, Hurt RD. Combination treatment with Varenicline and nicotine replacement therapy. Nicotine Tob Res. May; 2009 11(5):572–6. [PubMed: 19351781]*

21 *Bolt DM, Piper ME, Theobald WE, Baker TB. Why two smoking cessation agents work better than one: Role of craving suppression.,Nicotine Tob. Res., 2012 Feb;80(1):54-65. Epub 2011 Nov 21*

22 *Loh WY, Piper ME, Schlam TR, Fiore MC, Smith SS, Jorenby DE, Cook JW, Bolt DM, Baker TB., Nicotine Tob. Res., Should all smokers use combination smoking cessation pharmacotherapy? Using novel analytic methods to detect differential treatment effects over 8 weeks of pharmacotherapy., 2012 Feb;14(2):131-41. Epub 2011 Dec 16*

23 *Martinet Y., Bohadana A., Wirth N., Spinosa A., Le traitement de la dependence au tabac: Guide Pratique 2009*

24 *Escobar-Chávez J.J., Dominguez-Delgado C., Rodriguez-Cruz I. Targeting nicotine addiction: the possibility of a therapeutic vaccine. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2011; 5: 211–224. Published online 2011 April 18. doi: 10.2147/DDDT.S10033*

25 *Raupach T, Hoogsteder PH, Onno van Schayck CP. Nicotine vaccines to assist with smoking cessation: current status of research. Drugs. 2012 Mar 5;72(4):e1-16. doi: 10.2165/11599900-000000000-00000*

26 *Press Release. Selecta Biosciences Initiates Phase 1 Clinical Study of SEL-068, a First-in-Class Synthetic Nicotine Vaccine for Smoking Cessation and Relapse Prevention. 21 Nov 2011 6:00am EST http://www.reuters.com/article/2011/11/21/idUS94980+21-Nov-2011+BW20111121*

27 *Lancaster T, Stead LF. Silver acetate for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 1997, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD000191. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000191*

28 *Stead LF, Lancaster T. Nicobrevin for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD005990. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005990*

29 *Stead LF, Hughes JR. Lobeline for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2012, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD000124. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000124.pub2*

30 *Hughes JR, Stead LF, Lancaster T. Anxiolytics for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2000, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD002849. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002849*

31 *David SP, Lancaster T, Stead LF, Evins AE, Cahill K. Opioid antagonists for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 4. Art. No.: CD003086. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003086.pub2*

32 *Lancaster T, Stead LF. Mecamylamine (a nicotine antagonist) for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 1998, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD001009. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001009*

33 *Sood A, Ebbert JO, Wyatt KD, Croghan IT, Schroeder DR, Sood R, Hays JT. Gabapentin for smoking cessation. Nicotine Tob Res. 2010 Mar;12(3):300-4. Epub 2010 Jan 15*

34 *Cahill K, Ussher MH. Cannabinoid type 1 receptor antagonists for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD005353. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005353.pub4*

35 *West R, May S, McEwen A, McRobbie H, Hajek P, Vangeli E. A randomised trial of glucose tablets to aid smoking cessation. Psychopharmacology (Berl). 2010 Jan;207(4):631-5. Epub 2009 Oct 27*

36 *Park EW, Tudiver FG, Campbell T. Enhancing partner support to improve smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2012, Issue 7. Art. No.: CD002928. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002928.pub3*

37 *Cahill K, Perera R. Competitions and incentives for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD004307. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004307.pub3*

38 *Ussher MH, Taylor A, Faulkner G. Exercise interventions for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2012, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD002295. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002295.pub4*

39 *Barnes J, Dong CY, McRobbie H, Walker N, Mehta M, Stead LF. Hypnotherapy for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010, Issue 10. Art. No.: CD001008. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001008.pub2*

40 *White AR, Rampes H, Campbell J. Acupuncture and related interventions for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD000009. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000009.pub2*

41 *Hajek P, Stead LF. Aversive smoking for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2001, Issue 3. Art. No.: CD000546. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000546.pub2*

42 *Schnoll R.A., Patterson.F., Wileyto E.P., Heitjan D.F., Shields A.E., Asch D.A., Lerman C., Effectiveness of Extended-Duration Transdermal Nicotine Therapy, Ann Intern Med. 2010;152:144-151*

43 *Hall S.M., Humfleet G.L., Muñoz.R.F., Reus V.I., Robbins J.A., Prochaska J.J.Extended treatment of older cigarette smokers, Addiction, 104, 1043-52, doi :10,1111/j.1360-0443.2009:02548.x*

44 *Tonstad S., MD, PhD, Tonnesen P.,MD, PhD, Hajek P.,Phd, Williams K.E.,Phd, Billing C.B., MS, Reeves R.K.,MD, Effect of Maintenance Therapy With Varenicline on Smoking Cessation, JAMA, July 5, 2006*

45 *Hays J.T., Hurt R.D., Rigotti N.A., Niaura R., Gonzales D., Durcan M.J., Sachs D.P., Wolter T.D.,Buist A.S.,Johnston J.A., White J.D., Sustainedrelease Bupropion for pharmacologic relapse prevention after smoking cessation, a randomized, controlled trial, Ann.Intern.Med., 2001, Sept., 18, 135(6), 42333*

46 *Cox LS, Nollen NL, Mayo MS, Choi WS, Faseru B, Benowitz NL, Tyndale RF, Okuyemi KS, Ahluwalia JS., Bupropion for Smoking Cessation in African American Light Smokers: A Randomized Controlled Trial. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2012 Feb 22;104(4):290-8.28*

47 *Killen JD, Fortman SP., Murphy GM Jr, Harvard C., Arredondo C., Cromp D., Celio M., Abe L., Wang Y., Schatzberg AL, Extended treatment with Bupropion SR for cigarette smoking cessation, J. Consult Clin Psychol. 2006, Apr. 74(2), 286-94*

4.6. Treatment recommendations in special situations and population groups at risk

The interventions found to be effective in current smoking cessation guidelines are recommended for all individuals who use tobacco, except when medication use is contra-indicated, such as during pregnancy and for adolescents. There are also specific considerations for certain populations at risk, when insufficient evidence is available or when medication has not been shown to be effective (e.g. smokeless tobacco users, moderate smokers, etc.). Particular situations and groups at risk are examined in the following sub-chapters.

4.6.1. Treatment recommendations for pregnant women

Tobacco abstinence is essential for pregnant women. A Danish cohort[1] has shown that smoking during pregnancy doubles the risk of stillbirth and death during the first year of life. The in utero hypoxia related to smoking is associated with a low body weight at birth, but in many women cravings are very high during pregnancy.

The best choice is to stop smoking before pregnancy using all available support, but in countries such as France one in three pregnant women smoke at the initiation of pregnancy.

If cessation is possible with the best psychological support medication, this is the best choice during pregnancy. A reduction to a few cigarettes per day cannot be an acceptable goal. Only total tobacco abstinence before the end of the first term is an acceptable target.

Varenicline and bupropion are not indicated in pregnant women and are not recommended.

For nicotine replacement therapy data are missing to be able to draw general recommendations. No convincing study reports any specific side effects of nicotine replacement therapy as being more severe than the effects of smoking.

While there is compelling experimental and clinical evidence that nicotine harms the developing foetus[2] in several ways, evidence is lacking that NRT aids smoking cessation in pregnancy. There are pregnant women today who would have quit, but wear nicotine patches, persuaded by the safety assurances concerning NRT use. Moreover, new evidence reveals that offering a remedy for a risky behaviour inadvertently promotes it by suggesting that the risk is manageable[3].

Discrepancies of data explain the discrepancies of regulations: nicotine replacement therapy was indicated in pregnant women in France, but was contraindicated in Romania. A UK randomized trial[4]

where more than 80% of pregnant women did not receive treatment after one month did not show any difference in cessation except during the first month of treatment. Another trial with a higher dose of nicotine is expected at the end of 2012.

In countries where use of nicotine replacement therapy has been authorized for pregnant women, 16-hour patches are preferred to 24-hour patches because of the long time it takes to clear clearance nicotine in the foetus. Oral nicotine may be used in addition to patches or after cessation in case of cravings.

4.6.2. Treatment recommendations for young people under 18

Nicotine addiction is rapidly developed at young ages[5]. As tobacco use often begins in pre-adolescence, doctors should intervene vigorously for smoking prevention with priority in this age group.

Overview of the literature in this field shows a wide range of approaches, but also their limited effectiveness[5]. Smoking interventions for adolescents have included pharmacotherapy, behavioural approach (such as school and community-based programmes) and tobacco control policies; these interventions have had mixed results. It appears that the most significant therapeutic effect in teenagers was observed for self-monitoring and coping skills, motivational strategies (reducing ambivalence to change) and addressing social influences that affect smoking behaviour.

The Center for Disease Control (CDC) in the USA recommends as most efficient those interventions which are multi-componential and which combine school support-based programmes with local community involvement[6].

When smoking cessation counselling is delivered to young people, it must be taken into account that in most cases they underestimate their own nicotine dependence. Teenagers who smoke either occasionally or daily believe that they can easily quit smoking at any time. In actual fact, only about 4% of the smokers aged 12-19 succeed in quitting smoking every year, with a failure ratio higher than adult smokers[7]. Statistics also show that teenagers are very interested in quitting smoking: 82% of those aged between 11 and 19 years think about quitting and 77% have undertaken serious attempts to quit in the past year[7]. Teenagers' attempts are rarely planned: most teenagers choose to quit smoking without any qualified help, but research has demonstrated that young people who participate in smoking cessation programmes have twice as high a chance of successfully quitting[8].

Counselling and smoking cessation therapies recommended to people under the age of 18

Despite the high prevalence and significant health implications of adolescent smoking, little work has been done to develop smoking cessation programmes targeting this age group. This area of research has almost exclusively focused on psycho-social treatments, as shown in one meta-analysis which found a quit rate of 12% three months following treatment, compared with 7% among control groups[8]. One psycho-social intervention that has proven encouraging, but only with regard to the preliminary results, is contingency management (CM), which is a behavioural treatment based on operant conditioning, in which desired behaviours (such as smoking abstinence) are directly reinforced with rewards (e.g. vouchers, cash). Evidence suggests that CM, alone or when combined with cognitive-behavioural therapy (CBT), may be efficient in encouraging adolescents to quit smoking. One study (n=28)[10] demonstrated particularly encouraging results, with 53% of participants receiving CM and CBT achieving abstinence at the end of one-month treatment, compared with 0% of those receiving only CBT. Based on these pilot findings, a recent larger-scale study (n=110) investigated a three-week, twice-daily CM intervention, alone or combined with motivational therapy, among non-treatment seeking college student smokers[11]. Participants receiving CM (with monetary rewards, based on carbon monoxide levels in the first week and on smoking abstinence in the second and third weeks) demonstrated significantly lower carbon monoxide levels and a greater abstinence (55% v. 18% of readings) during treatment, than those not receiving CM.

One meta-analysis of seven studies on efficacy of counselling in young people showed that this method doubles long-term abstinence rates compared to the common approach (brief advice, self-help materials, and referral to smoking cessation centres) or compared to the absence of any intervention[11].
In general, teenagers can be approached using various treatment formats: either in individual sessions (face-to-face), by combining individual sessions with phone counselling/phone or Internet messages, or by group sessions. Counselling of teenagers must be confidential and must respect their privacy, and must preferably not be in the presence of parents or teachers.

Peer format sessions proved very efficient: this method provides counselling together with the young smoker's colleague or best friend, even though such partners are not smokers. If the teenager comes from a family with smokers or is passively exposed to smoking, it is also recommended to provide counselling to the parents.
Research has shown that counselling interventions for parents provided within paediatric services or in relation to hospitalized children, increased pro-quitting interest, the number of cessation attempts, as well as the smoking cessation rate in the respective parents. Moreover, informing parents about the risks of exposing their children to passive smoking can reduce exposure, as well as smoking rates among parents[5 8].

Programmes designed specifically for teens

These include: school-based tobacco cessation programmes[12], media campaigns for effective prevention messages[11], interactive smoking cessation programmes such as the European project *Adolescent Smoking[13] Cessation*, video lessons such as the Dutch programme *I do not smoke*, contests with prizes and incentives, such as *Quit and Win for Teenagers[14]*, *N-O-T (Not on Tobacco)* which is the American Lung Association's voluntary smoking cessation programme for high school students[15].

Telephone counselling

Tobacco quitlines are more appealing to adolescents due to the fact that they are easy to access and are semi-anonymous, they can be individualized to the caller within a structured protocol and can include proactive follow-up, so the counsellor, not the caller, takes the initiative to call back after initial contact has been established. For example, in the California Smokers' Helpline protocol, counsellors work to help adolescents view quitting rather than smoking as an adult behaviour. Also, they approach topics specific to this age category, such as: identity formation, sense of invulnerability, dependence on family, identification with peers and desire for autonomy[16].

In a study comprising 1058 high school pupils, such phone counselling methods were used weekly, obtaining a very good adherence to the treatment protocol in the study population (90%). In a similar study that provided cognitive-behavioural counselling and motivational interview by phone, one-year follow-up of the 2151 high school pupils proactively identified found 21.8% abstinent at 6 months in the intervention group v. 17.7% in the control group[5].

Pharmacotherapy for teenagers

Despite clear evidence of nicotine withdrawal and craving in adolescents[17 18 19], limited research has focused on pharmacological agents in adolescent smoking cessation. Although there are seven FDA-approved first-line medications for adult smoking cessation, there is not enough evidence to recommend any of these for the treatment of adolescent smokers. Moreover, the majority of European countries forbid by law prescribing medication for quitting smoking to this category of individuals. Tests of medications in adolescent smokers have been limited to nicotine replacement therapy and bupropion.

The very few studies published on this topic found either an insignificantly different abstinence rate for nicotine patch therapy v. placebo at 12-week follow-up from quit day, or did not find any differences

between efficacy of nicotine gum v. nicotine patch v. placebo at six-month follow-up. In all these study groups, young people received, besides study drug/placebo, a minimum of six counselling sessions[8].

A non-controlled, open-label trial of nicotine patch, combined with minimal behavioural treatment (n=101), demonstrated point prevalence abstinence rates of 11% at the end of treatment and 5% at six-month follow-up[20]. Another controlled study of both groups receiving CBT and CM (n=100) supported the safety of patch in adolescents, but revealed no differences between patch and placebo (28% v. 24% point prevalence abstinence at the end of treatment, respectively)[21]. In a randomized NRT trial involving 120 adolescent daily smokers, Killen et al. found at the end of treatment, and again at three-month follow up, that 20.6% of those assigned to patch were confirmed abstinent, compared with 8.7% in the gum group and 5% in the placebo group[22]. Moolchan et al. compared patch, gum and placebo among adolescent smokers also receiving group-based CBT for smoking cessation (n=120). Continuous abstinence following a two-week grace period was achieved by 18%, 7% and 3% in the three groups, respectively[23]. A recent pilot study (n=40) revealed poor treatment adherence and no difference in cessation outcomes between nicotine nasal spray and placebo[24].

In light of the modest effect of NRT, some investigators have focused on bupropion SR for adolescent smoking cessation. A research group conducted an open-label trial of bupropion SR, combined with brief individual counselling in adolescent smokers (n=16) and found 31% abstinence after four weeks of treatment[25]. Killen et al. compared combined treatment with bupropion SR 150 mg daily and nicotine patch to nicotine patch alone(n=211), both treatments provided together with a group skills training intervention. They found only 8% abstinence at 26-week follow-up for the combined therapy v. 7% for the nicotine patch alone[26].

In a large-scale randomized trial (n=312), Muramoto et al. compared bupropion SR 300 mg/day, bupropion SR 150 mg/day, and placebo treatment, added to brief weekly individual counselling[27]. The bupropion SR 300 mg/day group (but not the 150 mg/day group) demonstrated superior point prevalence abstinence, compared to placebo, at treatment conclusion (15% v. 6%) and at 26-week follow-up (14% v. 10%). In another study, 134 treatment-seeking adolescent smokers were randomized to receive bupropion SR and/or contingency management (CM), each alone or in combination with the other, in a 2×2 six-week controlled trial. Authors found abstinence rates of 27% for combined bupropion SR and CM, 8% for bupropion SR and non-CM, 10% for placebo and CM, and 9% for placebo and non-CM, at 30% treatment completers[28].

Consistent with recent reviews and US guidelines, there is currently insufficient evidence to recommend the use of pharmacotherapy for smoking cessation in adolescents. According to the clinical practice guidelines, referral to appropriate psycho-social intervention (e.g. school- or community-based, group

or individual counselling) is the most appropriate front-line treatment for adolescent smokers. Although these interventions produce relatively low overall quit rates, they do significantly increase the odds of quitting over no treatment. While pharmacotherapies may be considered, they should be prescribed only with close monitoring and after careful consideration of the adolescent's smoking rate, history of failed quit attempts, and current motivation to quit smoking. The inconclusive results from adolescent smoking cessation pharmacotherapy trials suggest the limits of prescribing such medication in adolescents[22].

Recommendations

- Doctors are recommended to question all young patients under the age of 18 about tobacco consumption and to transmit clear messages about the importance of abstaining from smoking (level of evidence C)[8].

- Counselling proved to be an efficient smoking cessation method for teenagers (level of evidence B)[5].

- Passive smoking is harmful to children and teenagers. Smoking cessation counselling provided within paediatric services proved efficient in increasing tobacco abstinence ratios in smoking parents. For this reason, in order to protect children against passive smoking, we recommend clinicians to evaluate parents' smoking and to provide them with advice and assistance for quitting tobacco consumption (level of evidence B)[5].

4.6.3. Treatment recommendations for smokers with respiratory, cardiovascular, psychiatric, cancer and other comorbidities

Tobacco users with comorbid medical conditions such as cancer, cardiac disease, COPD, diabetes, and asthma are important to target for tobacco use treatments, given the role that smoking plays in producing or exacerbating these conditions. Using chronic disease management programmes to integrate tobacco dependence interventions into treatment may be an effective and efficient way to deliver tobacco use interventions to these populations[29]. Cessation treatment proved to be efficient in smokers with a wide variety of comorbidities, even if some difficulties arise and precautions are imposed.

Cardiovascular disease

In a systematic review[30], Critchley and Capewell found that quitting smoking is associated with a substantial 36% reduction in risk of all-cause mortality among patients with coronary heart disease

(CHD), regardless of differences between the studies in terms of index cardiac events, age, sex, country and time period. Smoking cessation treatment for patients with cardiovascular diseases differs from those for other patients in that patients are often forced to quit smoking after an unexpected cardiovascular event that suddenly occurs and to continue abstinence for life. Since the onset of cardiovascular disease is the most significant reason that motivates smokers to quit smoking, physicians must provide appropriate cessation programmes for patients with cardiovascular diseases[31].
Special considerations should be made for smokers with cardiovascular disease because (1) as evidence shows, they should be strongly recommended to quit smoking; (2) they should discontinue smoking during the acute phase of cardiovascular disease and continue abstinence thereafter; and (3) they are contra-indicated for nicotine replacement therapy during the acute phase of cardiovascular disease[29]. Medication effects are substantially increased when coupled with behavioural interventions delivered as counselling by a doctor or other health care provider, as stop-smoking groups and also telephone quitlines. Quitlines are toll-free numbers with counselling available 24 hours a day[32].

All patients with any risk factors for cardiovascular disease should be instructed to quit smoking. Varenicline and/or nicotine replacement therapy should be considered. Apart from the recommended precautions for nicotine substitute use in smokers with acute cardiovascular diseases, current evidence suggests that nicotine replacement has shown no adverse effect on outcomes in patients with cardiac disease[3]. Varenicline seems to be reasonably safe in patients with stable CHD without a history of depression or psychiatric disease. Specific data about use of varenicline for smoking cessation in cardiovascular disease patients were quoted in Chapter 4.2.3. Treatment with varenicline. Nevertheless, more research is needed before it can be safely prescribed to all patients with CHD, in particular to those with co-morbid depression and unstable cardiovascular disease. Its risk/benefit profile also needs to be evaluated in equivalence trials where varenicline is compared to current treatments, including intensive counselling. Finally, interventions combining multiple strategies (pharmacological and psycho-social) may have better long-term efficacy, especially for those patients who do not respond to the drug alone[33].

Respiratory disease

Being exposed directly to tobacco smoke, the respiratory organs are the most affected by tobacco. This is why smoking cessation must be strongly encouraged in patients with COPD, lung cancer, asthma, respiratory infections, interstitial and sleep respiratory disorders.

COPD

Smoking cessation is the most important therapeutic intervention for COPD smoking patients. COPD patients who smoke have a particularly high level of nicotine dependence, which requires

structured smoking cessation programmes that comprise drug interventions as well as non-drug interventions.
Cochrane review on smoking cessation in COPD patients and current literature indicates that the smoking cessation concept to include medication and psycho-social support is effective for COPD patients (level of evidence A).

The psycho-social intervention consists of a structured smoking cessation programme over several hours by approaching cognitive aspects and subjective or objective respiratory findings, such as the lung function[34]. Some studies analyzed whether using special vocabulary like “smoker’s lung” or contingent reinforcement with lottery tickets for reduced breath carbon monoxide or performing lung function tests has a stronger impact on the efficacy of counselling. No significant differences were found when these more intensive interventions were compared with the usual advice; however, they did show a trend in favour of the intensive intervention.

The best way of increasing self-efficacy and self-esteem in these patients is to offer them continued assistance. The Clinical COPD Questionnaire (CCQ) is a valuable tool indicating the health-related quality-of-life gains attributable to smoking cessation among COPD patients[35]. Every smoker suffering from COPD should be repeatedly advised to quit smoking by his/her physician. One visit per month is recommended, but also intensive behavioural interventions in individual or group format[36].

In an open, randomized study examining four different NRT regimens used in a daily routine for COPD patients in a lung disease clinic, the average 12-month success rate for the three considered active treatments was only 5.6%[37]. Tonnesen et al. evaluated the efficacy of nicotine sublingual tablets and two levels of behavioural support[37] for smoking cessation in COPD patients. They found that abstinence rates were significantly superior in the sublingual nicotine group v. placebo, even though there was no significant difference between the effects of low v. high behavioural support. Analysis of 7372 COPD patients showed that smoking cessation counselling (SCC) in combination with NRT had the greatest effect on prolonged abstinence rates v. usual care, v. SCC alone and v. SCC combined with an anti-depressant[39].

A combination of different forms of NRT can be used as valid strategies to help COPD patients quit. The combination of two types of NRT with different types of delivery is highly recommended. Increasing the length of time that NRT is used to up to six or twelve months can help more smokers to quit than using NRT for the usual time. NRT can be used to help in the progressive reduction of the number of cigarettes smoked as a gateway to quitting permanently. COPD smokers are usually unmotivated to quit. Using this approach can help to increase own motivation and build up self-efficacy in quitting[36].

In three clinical trials that analyzed the efficacy of bupropion for treatment of smokers with COPD, it was found that bupropion was significantly more effective than placebo for achieving continuous abstinence at six-month follow-up (16% v. 9%)[40], that bupropion was more effective than placebo for achieving continuous abstinence at six-month follow-up (27.9% v. 14.6%)[41] and that bupropion and nortriptyline seem to be equally effective, but bupropion appears to be more cost-effective compared with placebo and nortriptyline[42]. Bupropion combined with counselling was significantly more effective in achieving prolonged abstinence than a placebo by 18.9% (95% CI 3.6-26.4%). Annual spirometry with a brief smoking cessation intervention, followed by a personal letter from a doctor, had a significantly higher three-year abstinence rate among COPD smokers, compared to smokers with normal lung function[43].

The efficacy and safety of varenicline for treating COPD smokers was evaluated in two studies: a multi-centre, double-blind study on 504 patients with mild to moderate COPD and without known psychiatric disorders and another open study on 472 smokers with severe or very severe COPD who received treatment for smoking cessation. In the first study, the continuous abstinence rate (CAR) for weeks 9 to 12 was significantly higher for patients in the varenicline group (42.3%) than for those in the placebo group (8.8%), respectively 18.6% v. 5.6% through weeks 9 to 52[44]. In the second study, as the treatment programme consisted of a combination of behavioural therapy and drug treatment (NRT, bupropion or varenicline), the CAR from 9 to 24 weeks for NRT, bupropion and varenicline was 38.2%, 60.0% and 61.0% respectively. Varenicline was more effective than nicotine patch: 61% v. 44.1%[45].

Hoogendoorn et al. analyzed the effectiveness of continued assistance in smokers with COPD and concluded that despite the high costs for this aggressive smoking cessation programme, beneficial economic effects are likely to be obtained in the long run[46].

Recommendations[37]

- NRT or varenicline should be used for smoking cessation in all smokers with COPD, regardless of disease severity and number of cigarettes smoked (level of evidence B).

- NRT, varenicline and bupropion SR are effective and well tolerated in smokers with COPD patients (level of evidence A).

Asthma

As cigarette smoking is an important predictor of asthma severity and poor asthma control, in a dose-dependent manner, tobacco cessation becomes crucial in the case of asthmatic smokers[47]. Asthma

smokers show more severe asthmatic symptoms, a greater need for rescue medication, greater corticosteroid resistance and poorer health-status indices than never-smokers. According to a study that evaluated the effect of smoking cessation on lung function and quality of life in patients with asthma during corticosteroid treatment, continuing smoking resulted in a greater decrease in lung function in long-term asthmatic smokers[48].

Two treatment strategies are recommended when looking ahead to better outcomes for people with asthma who smoke:

- to look for drugs to target the altered inflammatory mechanism (theophylline appears to increase the effect of low-dose ICS and to improve symptoms and FEV1; fluticasone/salmeterol combination confers greater improvements in airway hyper-responsiveness and airway calibre, compared to double the dose of fluticasone; leukotriene receptor antagonists have demonstrated preferential airflow improvements);
- to provide evidence-based quit smoking support (there is limited evidence to help us decide on the most effective asthma-specific stop-smoking programmes; behavioural techniques and telephone counselling proved efficient; evidence about risk of NRT spray must be considered)[5].

Recommendation

- Flag smokers with asthma as high-risk patients and discuss with them quitting smoking at every opportunity. Providing written asthma self-management plans and educational leaflets ensures stop smoking as a treatment for asthma is included[49 50].

Tuberculosis

Smokers have a higher risk of being infected with tuberculosis bacilli and once infected they develop tuberculosis disease more often than non-smokers. TB is spread more easily, pulmonary TB, sputum positive and cavity lesions are more frequent and also risks of TB relapses and death due to TB are higher in smokers with TB. Since smoking is known to increase the risk of TB infection and disease, never or quitting smoking helps better control of TB in a community. As smoking significantly reduces the effectiveness of TB treatment, the integration of smoking cessation into TB treatment programmes is highly advocated to reduce the dual global burden of smoking and TB[51].

The International Union Against Tuberculosis recommends the ABC approach to quit smoking (Ask-about smoking status, Brief Advice, Cessation support) for smoking TB patients. These three easy steps can be delivered by any health professional treating TB smokers and data must be noted in the patient's treatment record[52].

In a multi-centred non-randomized controlled study involving 120 TB patients who were current smokers at the time of TB diagnosis in Malaysia, patients were assigned to either of the two groups: the usual TB-DOT plus smoking cessation intervention SCI (SCIDOTS group) or the usual TB-DOTS only (DOTS group). On comparison, participants who received the integrated intervention had a better HR QoL – found as a significantly greater increase in EQ-5D utility score during six-month follow-up – than those who received just the usual TB care. The Euro QoL five-dimension questionnaire (EQ-5D) was developed to assess TB patients' self-evaluations of the impact of the disease and of the associated treatments on their physical, mental and social well-being and functioning[53].

Cancer disease

Tobacco cessation is a significant challenge in this complex patient population[54]. When treating tobacco dependence in patients with lung cancer, one should consider the following:

- **Motivation:** Evidence suggests that the majority of lung cancer patients are motivated to stop smoking. Yet, although a diagnosis of lung cancer is assumed to be a strong motivator, lung cancer patients who smoke are at various stages of readiness to quit.
- **Stigma and self-blame:** There is empirical evidence to indicate that lung cancer patients experience significant levels of perceived stigma whether they are current smokers or not.
- **Mood management:** As a result of a lung cancer diagnosis, patients often experience increased psychological distress, increased feelings of burden, stress and stigmatization.
- **Smoke-free homes:** Considerable evidence suggests that having a smoke-free home may be associated with increased successful quitting[55].

Patients with cancer may have higher levels of nicotine dependence, higher levels of co-morbidity, or more difficulty in quitting, as well as poorer health and physical functioning, and more stress and emotional distress. This suggests the need for more intense or tailored programmes that combine behavioural interventions with pharmacologic cessation[55]. Counselling, medication and motivational counselling are efficient in this category of patients. Combination pharmacotherapy has also been found to be effective with highly dependent smokers[55]. A nurse-managed smoking cessation programme for 145 patients with head and neck or lung cancer showed favourable long-term success rates (40% abstinence at six months). The programme was most intensive in the first month and consisted of physician's advice, nurse management intervention and different products (nicotine lozenges, bupropion and combinations of products) and lasted a total of one year, in order to support the patient through several (annual) risk situations, such as birthdays, stress situations and holidays[56].

Psychiatric disorders, drug consumers

Psychiatric disorders are more frequent in smokers and these patients may experience a difficult quitting process. Smoking behaviour is more often encountered in alcohol and drug users. These categories of smokers do more rarely ask for smoking cessation therapy. Treating their tobacco dependence is a complex process, within the context of a psychiatric diagnostic and specific medication. Compared to smokers with no history of psychiatric disorders, smokers who have ever had a mood disorder or an anxiety disorder (including those who had one in the past year) were all less likely to be abstinent at eight weeks post quit. Having had a diagnosis of an anxiety disorder was also related to a decreased likelihood of maintaining abstinence at six months post quit. These findings may offer a basis for treatment tailoring in smokers with psychiatric comorbidities[57]. A recently completed randomized, open-label trial compared treatment as usual (TAU) combined with nicotine patch plus cognitive behavioural group counselling for smoking cessation (n=153) to TAU alone (n=72) for patients enrolled in treatment programmes for drug or alcohol dependence, who were also interested in quitting smoking. This report is a secondary analysis evaluating the effect of depressive symptoms (n=70) or the history of depression (n=110) on smoking cessation outcomes. A significant association was seen between measures of depression and difficult to quit cigarettes. These data suggest evaluation and treatment of depressive symptoms may play an important role in improving smoking cessation outcomes in this category of patients[58].

One meta-analysis showed that anti-depressants, specifically bupropion SR and nortriptyline, are efficient in increasing long-term abstinence rates in smokers with a history of depression. Pharmacological treatment was associated to intensive counselling[5].

Although a high relapsing risk has been described in these patients, medication for tobacco dependence is efficient. Bupropion SR and nortriptyline are useful in schizophrenia, ameliorating this disease's symptoms and the associated depression. Varenicline can attenuate abstinence-induced adverse events and appears to be well-tolerated in smokers with schizophrenia[59]. Both varenicline and combination pharmacotherapy were effective and did not increase psychological distress for up to six months in smokers with comorbidities[60].

For treating smokers who suffer severe mental disorders like major depression, schizophrenia and psychosis, it is recommended to increase and prolong the treatment period, to implement joint psychological cognitive behavioural techniques and to use any drug treatment that helps to control/reduce relapse to smoking or to baseline psychiatric symptoms[61]. In schizophrenic patients, smoking status should be included in the clinical assessment and NRT should be provided to smokers[62].

Patients treated with atypical anti-psychotics could respond better to bupropion SR than those under standard anti-psychotics[5]. In an open label study of a group of 412 smokers (111 being diagnosed with psychiatric illnesses) varenicline was equally effective and was not associated with a higher incidence or severity of adverse drug reactions among patients with psychiatric comorbidity.

A comparative study on patients with and without a history of depression came to a similar conclusion about the efficacy and safety of varenicline in depressed patients. However, prescribers should closely monitor patients due to the possibility that the drug may cause psychiatric instability[63].

Counselling and pharmacotherapy are efficient in smokers treated simultaneously for illicit drug addiction, although there is little evidence on how nicotine addiction therapy influences drug addiction recovery. Current studies demonstrate the efficacy of a brief voucher-based contingency management intervention in promoting initial smoking abstinence among opioid-maintained patients[64].

Treating tobacco dependence is effective in patients with severe mental illness. Treatments that work in the general population work also for those with severe mental illness and appear almost equally effective. Treating tobacco dependence in patients with stable psychiatric conditions does not worsen mental state[65].

HIV infected patients

No long-term randomized clinical trial analyzed efficacy of interventions in this group of patients. More studies are needed. A three-month monitoring study indicated favourable results by phone counselling. Existing data show the efficacy of cessation medication in this category of smokers[5].

HIV-positive individuals are more likely to smoke than the general population. Nowadays, HIV-positive individuals live longer due to treatment advances, making the issue of cigarette smoking in this population a significant health concern. Yet, they have higher mortality rates and report lower quality of life than HIV-positive non-smokers. In addition, HIV-positive smokers appear to be at greater risk for developing invasive pneumococcal diseases and other infections compared with non-HIV infected individuals. Also, compared to non-smoking HIV-positive individuals, smoking among HIV-positive persons is associated with increased risk of several opportunistic infections and spontaneous pneumothorax. Data suggest that HIV-positive smokers underestimate the effects of smoking on their health, and some state that they will not live long enough for the health effects of smoking to matter. In addition, some HIV-positive smokers report that smoking is an effective way to cope with the stress of their illness[29].

4.6.4. Recommendations to approach post-smoking cessation weight gain

Most smokers who quit gain weight variably, below 5 kg, but 10% of them may gain over 15 kg weight. However, weight gain (WG) consecutive to smoking cessation is a minor threat on health, compared to the risks of continuing smoking[5].

The tendency to gain weight is higher in women than men, in black people, regardless of their gender, in subjects older than 55 and in heavy smokers.

Teenagers, if pre-occupied with body weight, start to smoke more frequently[5]. This is why there is a need to promote healthy methods of maintaining weight and to dispel the notion of tobacco use as a weight control method for adolescent smokers. Adolescents should be made aware that there are other ways to lose weight that are more effective and healthier, and such messages should be included in educational curricula, especially when discussing quitting smoking[66].

Data provided by Levine et al. showed weight-concerned women receiving the combination of CONCERNS (cognitive behavioural therapy CBT for smoking-related weight concerns and bupropion SR) were most likely to sustain abstinence at six months (34% v. 21% in standard CBT and bupropion v. 11.5% in CONCERNS and placebo). This effect was not related to differences in post-cessation WG or changes in weight concerns[67].
Nicotine replacement therapy and bupropion are efficient in limiting the weight gain described after smoking cessation. In two smoking cessation studies with varenicline compared to bupropion and placebo, the weight gain in the 12-week varenicline treatment group was lower (under 3 kg)[5].

The weight gain is produced by raising calorie supply and decreasing the metabolism ratio. The available data about involvement of metabolic mechanisms suggest that smokers will gain weight during a quit attempt, even though they do not raise the calorie supply[5]. The patient must be informed and prepared about the possibility of gaining weight and must be offered support for weight control, by encouraging him/her to adopt a healthy life style, to practice moderate physical exercise, to consume healthy food rich in fruits and vegetables, to sleep well and to limit alcohol use. A 45-minute exercise programme, three times a week, increases long-term smoking abstinence in women and limits overweight, if also combined with a cognitive-behavioural programme. Weight gain is minimal if smoking abstinence is associated to increasing physical activity[68].

Personalized weight management support may be effective and may not reduce abstinence, but there are too few data to be sure about this. One study showed a very low-calorie diet increased abstinence but did not prevent WG in the longer term. Cognitive behavioural therapy to accept WG did not limit post

cessation WG and may not promote abstinence in the long term. Exercise interventions significantly reduced weight in the long term, but not in the short term. More studies are needed to clarify whether this is an effect of treatment or a chance finding. Bupropion, fluoxetine, NRT and varenicline reduce post-cessation WG while using the medication. Although this effect was not maintained one year after stopping smoking, the evidence is insufficient to exclude a modest long-term effect. The data are not sufficient to make strong clinical recommendations for effective programmes to prevent weight gain after cessation[69].

Nicotine replacement – in particular 4 mg nicotine gum and 4 mg nicotine lozenge – appears to be effective in delaying post-cessation weight gain. Moreover, it seems there is a dose-response relation between gum use and weight suppression (i.e. the greater the gum use, the less weight gain occurs). Bupropion SR also appears to be effective in delaying post-cessation weight gain. However, once either nicotine gum or bupropion SR therapy is stopped, the quitting smoker gains on average an amount of weight that is about the same as if he/she had not used these medications.

Recommendation

- In those smokers concerned with a possible weight gain after stopping smoking, it is recommended to use varenicline, bupropion or nicotine gum as medication to limit possible post abstinence overweight (level of evidence B)[70].

References

1 *Kirsten Wisborg , Ulrik Kesmodel, Tine Brink Henriksen, Sjurdur Fródi Olsen and Niels Jørgen Secher Exposure to Tobacco Smoke in Utero and the Risk of Stillbirth and Death in the First Year of Life Am. J. Epidemiol. (2001) 154 (4): 322-327.*

2 *Nicotine for the Fetus, the Infant and the Adolescent?, Ginzel, K. H., Maritz, G., Marks, D., Neuberger, M., Pauly, J., Polito, J., Schulte-Hermann, R., Slotkin, T., Journal of Health Psychology, 2007 Sage Publications, Vol 12(2) 215–224, DOI: 10.1177/1359105307074240*

3 *Bolton, L., Cohen, J., & Bloom, P. (2006). Does marketing products as remedies create 'Get out of jail free cards'? Journal of Consumer Research, 33, 71–81*

4 *Coleman T et al. A Randomized Trial of Nicotine-Replacement Therapy Patches in Pregnancy. N Engl J Med 2012;366:808-818.*

5 *Trofor A., Mihaltan F., Mihaicuta S., Pop M., Todea D et.al., Romanian Society of Pulmonologists Smoking Cessation and Smoker's Assistance Guidelines (GREFA), 2-nd ed. – Tehnopress Iași, 2010, www.srp.ro*

6 *Teen Smoking Statistics, CDC, Mayo Clinic, ALA Teen Help.com*

7 *Tonnensen P., How to reduce smoking among teenagers, Eur Respir J 2002; 19:13*

8 *Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: 2008 Update, Clinical Practice Guideline. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services. Public Health Service. May 2008*

9 *Sussman S., Effects of sixty six adolescents tobacco use cessation trials and seventeen prospective studies of self-initiated quitting, Tobacco Induced Disease 2002, Jan 15; 1(1), 35-81*

10 *Krishnan-Sarin S., Duhiq a.M., McKee SA, McMahon TJ, Liss T., McFetridge A., Cavallo DA, Contingency management for smoking cessation in adolescents, Exp.Clin.Psychopharmacology, 2006, Aug; 14(3), 306-10*

11 *Tevyaw T.O'L, Colby S.M., Tidey J.W., Kahler C.W., Rohsenow D.J., Barnett N.P., Gwaltney C.J., Monti P.M., Contingency management and motivational enhancement: A randomized clinical trial for college student smokers, Nicotine Tob Res. 2009 June; 11(6): 739–749, Published online 2009 May 14. doi: 10.1093/ ntr/ntp058*

12 *www.notontobacco.com*

13 *http://arnoldagency.com/cleanindoorair/*

14 *Trofor A., Mihaltan F, Mihaicuta S., Lotrean L., Smoking cessation and prevention for young people Romanian expertise, Pneumologia, Vol. 58 – Nr. 1/ 2009, p. 7278., ISSN 12233056*

15 *http://www.ttac.org/TCN/peers/pdfs/02.18.11/VT_2009-2010_N-O-T_Program_Summary.pdf*

16 *Tedeschi GJ, Zhu S-H, Anderson CM, et. al. (2005). Putting it on the line: Telephone counseling for adolescent smokers. J Couns Dev, 83, 416-424*

17 *Jacobsen LK, Krystal JH, Mencl WE, Westerveld M, Frost SJ, Pugh KR., Effects of smoking and smoking abstinence on cognition in adolescent tobacco smokers Biol Psychiatry. 2005 Jan 1;57(1):56-66.PMID: 15607301 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE*

18 *Killen JD, Ammerman S, Rojas N, Varady J, Haydel F, Robinson TN, Do adolescent smokers experience withdrawal effects when deprived of nicotine?, Exp.Clin Psychopharmacol., 2001 May;9(2):176-82*

19 *Prokhorov AV, Hudmon KS, de Moor CA, Kelder SH, Conroy JL, Ordway N., Nicotine dependence, withdrawal symptoms, and adolescents' readiness to quit smoching, Nicotine Tob. Research, 2001 May;3(2):151-5*

20 *Hurt RD, Croghan GA, Beede SD, Wolter TD, Croghan IT, Patten CA., Nicotine patch therapy in 101 adolescent smokers: efficacy, withdrawal symptom relief, and carbon monoxide and plasma cotinine levels, Arch.Pediatr.Adolesc.Med. 2000 Jan;154(1):31-7*

21 *Hanson K, Allen S, Jensen S, Hatsukami D, Treatment of adolescent smokers with the nicotine patch. Nicotine Tob.Res., 2003 Aug;5(4):515-26*

22 *Breland, A.B., Colby, S., Dino, G., Smith, G., Taylor, M. Youth smoking cessation interventions: Treatments, barriers, and recommendations for Virginia. Richmond, Virginia: Virginia Commonwealth University, Institute for Drug and Alcohol Studies, 2009. http://www.vcu.edu/idas/vytp/reports/index.html*

23 *Moolchan ET, Robinson ML, Ernst M, Cadet JL, Pickworth WB, Heishman SJ, Schroeder JR., Safety and efficacyof the nicotine patch and gum for the treatment of adolescent tobacco addiction, Pediatrics, 2005 Apr;115(4):e407-14*

24 *Rubinstein ML, Benowitz NL, Auerback GM, Moscicki AB A randomized trial of nicotine nasal spray in adolescent smokers. Pediatrics, 2008 Sep;122(3):e595-600*

25 *Upadhyaya HP, Brady KT, Wang W Bupropion SR in adolescents with comorbid ADHD and nicotine dependence: a pilot study, J.Am.Acad.Child.Adolesc.Psychiatry, 2004 Feb;43(2):199-205*

26 *Killen JD, Robinson TN, Ammerman S, Hayward C, Rogers J, Stone C, Samuels D, Levin SK, Green S,*

Schatzberg AF., Randomized clinical trial of the efficacy of Bupropion combined with nicotine patch in the treatment of adolescent smokers, J. Consult. Clin.Psychol., 2004 Aug;72(4):729-35

27 *Muramoto ML, Leischow SJ, Sherrill D, Matthews E, Strayer LJ., Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of 2 dosages of sustained-release Bupropion for adolescent smoking cessation., Arch. Pediatr. Adolesc.Med.2007 Nov; 161(11): 1068-74*

28 *Gray K.M., Carpenter M.J., Baker N.L., Hartwell K.J., Lewis A.L., Hiott D.W., Deas D., Upadhyaya H.P., Bupropion SR and Contingency Management for Adolescent Smoking Cessation, J Subst Abuse Treat. 2011January; 40(1): 77-86, Published online 2010 October 8. doi: Â 10.1016/j.jsat.2010.08.010*

29 *Fiore M. C.,Tobacco Use and Dependence: A 2011 Update of Treatments CME/CE, http://www.medscape.org/viewarticle/757167*

30 *Critchley JA, Capewell S., WITHDRAWN: Smoking cessation for the secondary prevention of coronary heart disease, Cochrane Syst. Review 2012 Feb., 15;2:CD003041*

31 *Guidelines for Smoking Cessation (JCS 2010)– Digest Version –JCS Joint Working Group, Circulation JournalOfficial Journal of the Japanese Circulation Society. http://www.j-circ.or.jp*

32 *http://rxforchange.ucsf.edu/*

33 *Ockene I. Salmoirago-Blotcher E.Varenicline for Smoking Cessation in Patients With Coronary Heart Disease, Circulation, 2010, 121,188-90*

34 *Andreas S, Hering T., Mühlig S., Nowak D., Raupach T., Worth H., Clinical Practice Guideline, Smoking Cessation in Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease An Effective Medical Intervention Deutsches Ärzteblatt International -Dtsch Arztebl Int 2009; 106(16): 276–82*

35 *Papadopoulos G., Vardavas C.I.,Limperi M., Linardis A.., Georgoudis G.,Behrakis P.Smoking cessation can improve quality of life among COPD patients: Validation of the clinical COPD questionnaire into Greek, BMC Pulmonary Medicine 2011, http://www.biomedcentral.com/1471-2466/11/13*

36 *Jiménez-Ruiz C.A., Luhning S., Buljubasich.D., Pendino R. Smoking Cessation Treatment for Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease Smokers, European Respiratory Disease, Touch Briefings 2011, 106-10*

37 *Tønnesen P., Carrozzi L., Fagerström K.O., Gratziou C., Jimenez-Ruiz C.,Nardini S., Viegi G., Lazzaro C., Campell L.A., Dagli E., West R. Smoking cessation in patients with respiratory diseases: a high priority, integral component of therapy,Eur Respir J 2007; 29: 390–417, DOI: 10.1183/09031936.00060806*

38 *Tønnesen P, Mikkelsen K, Bremann L, Nurse-conducted smoking cessation in patients with COPD, using nicotine sublingual tablets and behavioral support, Chest, 2006;130(2):334–42*

39 *Strassmann R, Bausch B, Spaar A, et al., Smoking cessation interventions in COPD: a network meta-analysis of randomised trials, Eur Respir J, 2009;34:634–40*

40 *Tashkin DP, Kanner R, Bailey W, et al., Smoking cessation in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial, Lancet, 2001;357:1571–5*

41 *Wagena EJ, Knispchild PG, Huibers MJ, et al., Efficacy of Bupropion and nortryptiline for smoking cessation among people at risk for or with COPD, Arch Intern Med, 2005;165:2286–92*

42 *Van Schayck CP, Kaper J, Wagena EJ, et al., The costeffectiveness of antidepressants for smoking cessation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) patients, Addiction, 2009;104:2110–7*

43 *Coronini-Cronberg S., Heffernan C., Robinson M. Effective smoking cessation interventions for COPD patients: a review of the evidence J R Soc Med Sh Rep, 2011;2:78,DOI10.1258/shorts.2011.011089*

44 *Tashkin DP, Rennard S, Hays JT, et al., Effects of Varenicline on smoking cessation in patients with mild to moderate COPD: a randomized controlled trial, Chest, 2011;139:591–9*

45 *Jiménez-Ruiz CA, Ramos Pinedo A, Cicero Guerrero A, et al., Characterisitics of COPD smokers and effectiveness and safety of smoking cessation medications, Nicotine Tob Res, (in press)*

46 *Hoogendoorn M, Feenstra TL, Hoogenveen RT, Rutten-van Mölken MPMH, Long term effectiveness and costeffectiveness of smoking cessation interventions in patients with COPD, Thorax, 2010;65:711–8*

47 *Polosa R., Russo C., Caponnetto P., Bertino G., Sarvà M., Antic T., Mancuso s., Al-Delaimy W..K., Greater severity of new onset asthma in allergic subjects who smoke: a 10-year longitudinal study, Respiratory Research 2011, 12:16*

48 *An-Soo Jang, Sung-Woo Park, Do-Jin Kim, SooTaek Uh, Young Hoon Kim, Hun Gyu Whang,Gun Il Lim, Choon-Sik Park, Effects of Smoking Cessation on Airflow Obstruction and Quality of Life in AsthmaticSmokers,Allergy Asthma Immunol Res. 2010 October;2(4):254-259, doi: 10.4168/aair.2010.2.4.254, pISSN 2092-7355, eISSN 2092-7363*

49 *Tobacco use in relation to COPD and asthma M.N. Hylkema et al Eur Respir J 2007; 29: 438–445*

50 *Achieving asthma control in practice: Understanding the reasons for poor control. Haughney; Respiratory Medicine (2008) 102, 1681-1693*

51 *Chiang YC, Lin YM, Lee JA, Lee CN, Chen HY., Tobacco consumption is a reversible risk factor associated with reduced successful treatment outcomes of anti-tuberculosis therapy, Int.J.Inf. Dis, 2012 Feb; 16(2), e130-5 Epub 2011 Dec 18*

52 *Bissell K., Fraser T., Chiang C-Y, Enarson D.A., Smoking Cessation and Smokefree Environments for Tuberculosis Patients, Paris, France: international Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease, 2010*

53 *Awaisu A.,Mohamed M.H.N., Noordin N.M., Muttalif A.R., Aziz N.A., Sulaiman S.A.S. ,Mahayiddin A.A. Impact of connecting tuberculosis directly observed therapy short-course with smoking cessation on health-related quality of life, Tobacco Induced Diseases 2012, 10:2 http://www.tobaccoinduceddiseases.com/content/10/1/2*

54 Nayan S.,Gupta M.K., Sommer D.D., Evaluating Smoking Cessation Interventions and Cessation Rates in Cancer Patients: A Systematic Review andMeta-Analysis International Scholarly Research Network ISRN Oncology Volume 2011, Article ID 849023, 7 pages doi:10.5402/2011/849023

55 *Cataldo J.K.Dubey S.,Prochaska J.J.Smoking Cessation: An Integral Part of Lung Cancer Treatment, Oncology 2010;78:289–301DOI: 10.1159/000319937*

56 *de Bruin-Visser J.C. , Ackerstaff H., Rehorst H.,Rete`V.P., Hilgers F.J.M., Integration of a smoking cessation program in the treatment protocol for patients with head and neck and lung cancer, Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol (2012) 269:659–665 DOI 10.1007/s00405-011-1673-0*

57 *Piper M., Smith S.S., Schlam T.R., Fleming M.F., Bittrich A.A., Brown J.L., Leitzke C.J., Zehner M.E., Fiore M.C.,Baker T.B., Psychiatric Disorders in Smokers Seeking Treatment for Tobacco dependence: Relations with Tobacco dependence and Cessation J Consult Clin Psychol. 2010 February ; 78(1): 13. doi:10.1037/a0018065*

58 *Sonne S.C., Nunes E,V., Jiang H., Tyson C., Rotrosen J., Reid M., The Relationship Between Depression and Smoking Cessation Outcomes in Treatment-Seeking Substance Abusers, Am J Addict. 2010 March 1; 19(2): 111–118. doi:10.1111/j.1521-0391.2009.00015.x*

59 *Liu ME, Tsai SJ, Jeang SY, Peng SL, Wu SL, Chen MC, Tsai YL, Yang ST., Varenicline prevents affective and cognitive exacerbation during smoking abstinence in male patients with schizophrenia, Psychiatry Res. 2011 Nov 30;190(1):79-84. Epub 2011 Jun 1*

60 *Steinberg MB, Bover MT, Richardson DL, Schmelzer AC, Williams JM, Foulds J. Abstinence and*

psychological distress in co-morbid smokers using various pharmacotherapies. Drug Alcohol Depend. 2011 Mar 1;114(1):77-81. Epub 2010 Oct 16

61 *Molina-Linde JM. Effectiveness of smoking cessation programs for seriously mentally ill. Actas Esp Psiquiatr. 2011 Mar-Apr;39(2):106-14. Epub 2011 Mar 1*

62 *Allen MH, Debanné M, Lazignac C, Adam E, Dickinson LM, Damsa C. Effect of nicotine replacement therapy on agitation in smokers with schizophrenia: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study. Am J Psychiatry. 2011 Apr;168(4):395-9. Epub 2011 Jan 18*

63 *Ebbert J.O., Wyatt K.D., Zirakzadeh A.,Burke M.V.,Hays J.T. Clinical utility of Varenicline for smokers with medical and psychiatric comorbidity, International Journal of COPD 2009:4 421–430*

64 *Dunn K.E., Kathryn A. Saulsgiver K.A., Sigmon S.C., Contingency management for behavior change: Applications to promote brief smoking cessation among opioid-maintained patients, Exp Clin Psychopharmacol. 2011 February ; 19(1): 20–30. doi:10.1037/a0022039*

65 *Banham L, Gilbody S., Smoking cessation in severe mental illness: what works? Addiction. 2010 Jul;105(7):1176-89. Epub 2010 May 11*

66 *Cavallo D.A.http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/126/1/e66.long - aff-1, Smith A.E., Schepis T.S., Desai R., Potenza M.N.,Krishnan-Sarin S., Smoking Expectancies, Weight Concerns, and Dietary Behaviors in Adolescence, Pediatrics 2010;126:1 e 66-e 72, Published online June 14, 2010 http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/126/1/e66.long*

67 *Levine M.D., Perkins K.A., Kalarchian M.A., Yu Cheng, Houck P.R.,, Slane J.D., Marcus M.D., Bupropion and Cognitive Behavioral Therapy for Weight-Concerned Women Smokers, Arch Intern Med. 2010 March 22; 170(6): 543–550. doi:10.1001/archinternmed.2010.33*

68 *Marcus BH, Lewis BA, Hogan J, et al. The efficacy of moderateintensity exercise as an aid for smoking cessation in women: a randomized controlled trial. Nicotine Tob Res 2005;7:87180*

69 *Farley AC, Hajek P, Lycett D, Aveyard P. Interventions for preventing weight gain after smoking cessation, Cochrane Database Syst. Review, 2012 Jan 18;1:CD006219. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22258966*

70 *Plotnikoff RC, Bercovitz K, Rhodes RE, et al. Testing a conceptual model related to weight perceptions, physical activity and smoking in adolescents. Health Educ Res 2007;22:192202*

4.7. Treatment recommendations to prevent relapse to smoking

Previous data show that behavioural interventions were ineffective in relapse prevention for those who quit smoking by medical aid or by own will. Nicotine gum had a modest effect in preventing relapse, but this was not so in the case of bupropion. The specific individual or group interventions did not prevent relapse, regardless of their duration or contact time, even after eight weeks of phone counselling[3]. In order to design effective interventions to reduce relapse in vulnerable categories of smokers, such as postpartum women or incarcerated people, identification of specific relapsing factors can increase the efficacy of combined motivational interview and cognitive-behavioural therapy[1 2].

A study published by P. Hayek et al. in 2009 described the high efficiency of prolonged varenicline administration in preventing relapse, especially in those patients who achieve abstinence later on, during the standard 12-week varenicline cure. Patients were randomized in two groups: three months supplemental varenicline treatment v. three months supplementing with placebo. The authors report a higher risk of relapse in patients who stopped smoking only in the 11th week of treatment, compared to those who stopped as of the first week. Abstinence ratio in the 52nd week was 5.7% for the late abstinent people and 54.9% for the early ones. From this viewpoint it can be concluded that a repeated 12-week course of varenicline in smokers who do not succeed to quit at the week 1 or week 2 set quit day, will prove beneficial, as observed in this study on 1208 patients, who were still abstinent in the 12th week of varenicline therapy[3].

A 2010 systematic review of the effectiveness of relapse prevention interventions among abstinent smokers who had completed an initial course of treatment or who had abstained unassisted, pooling only outcome data from similar follow-up time points revealed that self-help materials appear to prevent relapse in initially unaided quitters. Use of NRT, bupropion and varenicline appears to be effective in preventing relapse following an initial period of abstinence or an acute treatment episode. There is currently no good evidence that behavioural support prevents relapse after initial unaided abstinence or following an acute treatment period[4].

Bupropion, NRT and varenicline appear cost-effective at preventing relapse by smokers during quit attempts or who have recently become abstinent. More widespread use of these effective relapse prevention treatments could add a substantial health gain, at an acceptable cost, for health care providers[5].
Japuntich et al. examined the effects of five types of pharmacotherapy for smoking cessation (bupropion, nicotine lozenge, nicotine patch, bupropion and lozenge, patch and lozenge) over eight weeks following a quit attempt. Authors used the approach described by Shiffman et al. to examine the effect of smoking cessation medications on three smoking cessation "milestones": initial abstinence, lapse and the lapse-relapse transition. In sum, these researchers hypothesized that, compared to placebo: (1) bupropion will increase initial abstinence rates; (2) the nicotine lozenge will reduce lapse risk; (3) bupropion and nicotine patch will reduce relapse risk following a lapse; and (4) combination pharmacotherapies (bupropion and lozenge, patch and lozenge) will produce beneficial effects relative to the monotherapies at each of the milestones. This research found that smoking cessation medications are quite effective at promoting initial abstinence and reducing lapse risk, but the evidence is weaker that they prevent a transition from lapse to relapse. Combination of pharmacotherapies tended to be superior to the monotherapies in boosting attainment of initial abstinence and in lapse prevention. The nicotine patch and lozenge was superior to bupropion and lozenge in producing initial abstinence[6].

Although the field of nicotine vaccines has had setbacks, the magnitude of the tobacco epidemic, the positive pre-clinical research and the observed clinical trends indicate that continued research is needed. Combination of vaccines with pharmacotherapy could represent a solution for maintenance of abstinence/relapse prevention[7].

Relapse defined as the resumption of substance use after a period of abstinence is a frustrating but unavoidable part of recovery from the smoking process. Referring to relapse as long-term treatment failure in a general sense, Piasecki shows it is a common and quick finding among quitters, as the vast majority of smokers enrolling in smoking cessation trials report a history of past quit attempts, as most have already failed at least once while using a pharmacological cessation aid[9 10] and as many lapses occur within the first 24 hours following the quit day. Definitions for lapse/slip and relapse can be found in Chapter 4.1 (Therapeutic interventions for tobacco use and tobacco dependence).

Three major strategies are common to current relapse prevention programmes: (1) cognitive-behavioural strategies to avoid relapse when cravings occur and to learn from any lapse event; (2) social support strategies focusing on the smoker's need for emotional support from family members/ close friends; (3) lifestyle change strategies centred on helping smokers develop new social identities as drug-free individuals[8].

Knowledge of the degree of relapse risk might help clinicians provide individuals with optimal treatments by identifying those in need of more aggressive interventions. Such interventions might

include either higher doses or longer durations of pharmacotherapy, or more frequent or more intense psycho-social interventions. Thus, Bolt et al. developed the WI-PREPARE seven-item questionnaire to provide researchers and clinicians with a tool to measure relapse proneness that is effective in predicting both short- and long-term relapse among smokers interested in quitting[11].
A review of relapse prevention interventions for smoking cessation – done on 36 studies that randomized abstainers – permitted the following authors' conclusions:

- At present there is insufficient evidence to support the use of any specific behavioural intervention for helping successful quitters to avoid relapse.
- Whereas extended treatment with varenicline may prevent relapse, extended treatment with bupropion is unlikely to have a clinically important effect and studies of extended treatment with nicotine replacement are needed[12].

References

1 *Clarke J.G., Martin R.A., LAR Stein, Lopes C.E., Mello J., Friedmann P., Bock B., Working Inside for Smoking Elimination (Project W.I.S.E.) study design and rationale to prevent return to smoking after release from a smoke free prison BMC Public Health 2011, 11:767, http://www.biomedcentral.com/1471-2458/11/767*

2 *Polanska K, Hanke W, Sobala W, Lowe JB, Jaakkola JJ, Predictors of smoking relapse after delivery: prospective study in central Poland, Matern Child Health J. 2011 Jul;15(5):579-86*

3 *Hayek P.,Tonnesen P., Arteaga C., Russ C., Tonstad S.,Varenicline in prevention of relapse to smoking: effect of quit pattern on response to extended treatment, Addiction,2009,104, 15971602*

4 *Agboola S, McNeill A, Coleman T, Leonardi Bee J., A systematic review of the effectiveness of smoking relapse prevention interventions for abstinent smokers.Addiction. 2010 Aug;105(8):1362-80*

5 *Taylor M, Leonardi-Bee J, Agboola S, McNeill A, Coleman T., Cost effectiveness of interventions to reduce relapse to smoking following smoking cessation,Addiction,2011 Oct;106(10):1819-26)*

6 *Japuntich S.J., Piper M.E., Leventhal A.M., Bolt D.M., Baker T.B.,The Effect of Five Smoking Cessation Pharmacotherapies on Smoking Cessation Milestones, J Consult Clin Psychol 2011 February ; 79(1): 34–42*

7 *Fahim RE, Kessler PD, Fuller SA, Kalnik MW, Nicotine vaccines, CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets, 2011 Dec 1;10(8):905-15*

8 *Durcan, M. J., White, J., Jorenby, D. E., Fiore, M. C., Rennard, S. I., Leischow, S. J., et al. (2002). Impact of prior nicotine replacement therapy on smoking cessation efficacy. American Journal of Health Behavior, 26, 213– 220*

9 *Piasecki T.M., Relapse to smoking, Clinical Psychology Review 26 (2006) 196– 215*

10 *DeJong W., Relapse Prevention: An Emerging Technology for Promoting Long-Term Drug Abstinence, The International Journal oT Llic Addictions. WOj, 68 I ~ 705, 1904*

11 *Bolt D., M., Piper M.E., McCarthy D.E., Japuntich J.S., Fiore M.C., Smith S.S., Baker T.B., The Wisconsin predicting patients relapse questionnaire, Nicotine & Tobacco Research, Volume 11, Number 5 (May 2009) 481–4*

12 *Hajek P, Stead LF, West R, Jarvis M, Lancaster T Relapse prevention interventions for smoking cessation (Review) Copyright © 2009 The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, http://www.thecochranelibrary.com*

4.8. Group smoking cessation counselling

Group behavioural therapy implies scheduled meetings where people who smoke receive information, advice and encouragement and some form of behavioural intervention (e.g. cognitive behavioural therapy). This therapy is offered weekly for at least the first four weeks of a quit attempt (i.e. for four weeks following the quit date). Normally, group counselling is combined with pharmacotherapy[1].

There are two ways to approach conducting a group. One is scholastic, with the health professionals acting as teachers and giving information about how to achieve and maintain abstinence from smoking. The other one seeks mutual support among group members in order to achieve abstinence.

A Cochrane review found 16 of 55 trials that compared a group programme with a self-help programme. There was an increase in cessation with the use of a group programme (OR 2.04; 95% CI 1.60-2.60). In an evaluation of seven trials, group programmes were found to be more effective than no intervention controls (OR 2.17; 95% CI 1.37-3.45). There was no evidence that group therapy was more effective than individual counselling with a similar intensity. Limited evidence was found that addition of group therapy to other forms of treatment, such as advice from a health professional or nicotine replacement, produced any extra benefits. Even no effect was found of manipulating the social interactions between participants in the group sessions[2].

Research has demonstrated that evidence-based smoking cessation services are a highly cost-effective way of helping smokers to stop smoking. From NHS smoking cessation clinic data and controlled trials, it has become clear that if smokers receive support from specialist clinics, with treatment in groups along with access to combination NRT or varenicline, they will be more likely to succeed than those smokers receiving treatment in primary care and those receiving one-to-one and single NRT[3].

Data from a study interviewing both key personnel and smokers in three types of cessation services (specialized teams, community-based health care workers and combination of both) suggest that the service structure, the method of support, the health care professionals involved and the pharmacotherapy, all play a role in successful quitting. Group support resulted in the highest quit rates (64.3% for closed groups v. 42.6% for one-to-one support offered by specialists). Services must be tailored to support individual needs with patient choice and with access to varied services, including group counselling[4].

Group counselling is effective for smoking cessation. Inclusion of social support in a group intervention and the types of cognitive-behavioural components included in the group do not influence its efficacy.

There is no clear evidence that group counselling is more effective than individual counselling.

References

1 *www.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=404427*

2 *JimenezRuiz C., Psychological and behavioural interventions for smoching cessation, Eur.Respir.Mon., 2008 42, 61–73*

3 *Stop Smoking Wales Annual Report 2010-2011, Stop Smoking Wales Editorial Group, 15/08/2011, stop.smoking@wales.nhs.uk*

4 *Mardle T., Merrett S.Wright J., Percival F.Lockhart I., Real world evaluation of three models of NHS smoking cessation service in England BMC Research Notes 2012, 5:9 doi:10.1186/1756-0500-5-9*

4.9. Recommendations for Smoking Reduction approach

Smoking reduction was defined as a 50% decrease in initial cigarette use, but without complete abstinence. Smoking reduction could be more feasible if supported by therapy[1].

Limited data (from small studies, on selected populations and for short follow-up periods) suggest that a substantial smoking reduction would reduce several cardiovascular risk factors and would ameliorate respiratory symptoms. Smoking reduction is associated with a 25% decrease in tobacco bio-markers and pulmonary cancer incidence and with a low, almost insignificant, increase in the birth weight of babies born to smoking mothers. Remarkable benefits on the pulmonary function do not seem to occur if smoking is reduced[2].

Smoking reduction could represent a therapeutic alternative for smokers not yet ready to quit smoking completely. The smoking cessation ratio in a study group treated with nicotine gum was double v. placebo after three months and tripled at 12-month follow-up[1]. Concomitant nicotine gum use with reduced continuing smoking was well tolerated with a significant decrease of the carbon monoxide biomarker[1]. The ROSCAP study concerning smoking reduction in cardiac patients was a controlled randomized trial which assessed efficacy of the smoking reduction strategy on diminishing the harmful effects of tobacco exposure. Those who managed to reduce smoking were especially men, with a more intense tobacco consumption compared to the control group.

Spontaneous reduction is more frequently encountered amongst ill smokers. Cardiac disease history is a strong predictor of a future smoking reduction attempt[1 3].

Recommendation

Smoking reduction increases the probability of a future smoking cessation attempt[2].

References

1 *Trofor A., Mihaltan F., Mihaicuta S., Pop M., Todea D et.al., Romanian Society of Pulmonologists Smoking Cessation and Smoker's Assistance Guidelines (GREFA), 2-nd ed. – Tehnopress Iași, 2010, www.srp.ro*

2 *Ludvig J, Miner B, Eisenberg MJ. Smoking cessation in patients with coronary artery disease, Am Heart J 2005;149:56572*

3 *Christenhusz L, Pieterse M, Seydel E, et al. Prospective determinants of smoking cessation in COPD patients within a high intensity or a ounselingselling intervention. Patient Educ .Couns. 2007;66:1626*

5.0

Research and Scientific Recommendations for Evaluating Smoking Cessation

5.1. Criteria for clinical research in smoking cessation

Smoking cessation treatment is now integrated into many health care systems and a major research effort is under way to improve current success rates. Until recently, results from randomized clinical trials have been reported in many different ways, leading to problems of interpretation. West et al. proposed six standard criteria comprising the Russell Standard(RS). These criteria are applicable to cessation trials where participants have a defined target quit date and there is face-to-face contact with researchers or with clinical staff. These criteria are: (1) follow-up for six months (RS6) or 12 months (RS12) from the target quit date or from the end of a predefined grace period; (2) self-report of smoking abstinence over the whole follow-up period allowing up to five cigarettes/day in total; (3) biochemical verification of abstinence at least at the six- or 12-month follow-up point; (4) use of an "intention-to-treat" approach in which data from all randomized smokers are included in the analysis unless they have died or moved to an untraceable address (participants who are included in the analysis are counted as smokers if their smoking status at the final follow-up visit cannot be determined); (5) follow-up of the "protocol violators" and using their true smoking status in the analysis; and (6) collecting follow-up data blind to smokers' allocation to trial group.

The 2008 NICE public health guidelines showed that the following research questions should be more frequently addressed by research commissioners and funders, to fill the most important gaps in the current evidence:

- the most effective and cost-effective ways to prevent relapse in those who have been able to quit smoking;
- how to determine the long-term outcomes of the Stop Smoking Services, particularly among minority ethnic and disadvantaged communities;
- the effectiveness of smoking cessation interventions delivered through new media such as podcasts, e-mail and text messaging;
- the comparative effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of both types of telephone quitlines – proactive (contact made by counsellors) and reactive (contact made by people who smoke);

- comparative studies to evaluate the long-term effectiveness of cytisine for smoking cessation;
- the individual's experience and satisfaction with the smoking cessation services.

5.2 Cost-effectiveness of tobacco dependence therapies

Tobacco control aims to ensure that people can breathe smoke-free, healthy air by banning smoking in indoor public places. Smoking cessation, one of the major components of tobacco control, reduces many health problems by helping smokers to quit. There is a wide range of research demonstrating the effectiveness of smoking cessation interventions. There is also sufficient literature on the cost-effectiveness of smoking cessation based on surveys carried out in many countries. Earlier studies evaluated bupropion and nicotine replacement therapies. One earlier study on the cost-effectiveness of smoking cessation interventions revealed that, compared with other preventive interventions, smoking cessation was extremely cost-effective[1]. The study was designed for primary care physicians to screen all adult smokers and motivate them to quit during routine visits. Only counselling and NRT were used for the cessation intervention. The average cost was calculated to be USD 3779 per quitter, USD 2587 per life-year saved and USD 1915 for every QALY saved.

Compared to routine strategies for preventing myocardial infarction, smoking cessation intervention was found to be more cost-effective. More than GBP 10,000 would be spent per year of life saved for primary prevention of myocardial infarction with drugs such as simvastatin or pravastatin, whereas a smoking cessation intervention, including brief advice and NRT, would cost only several hundred to one thousand pounds[2].

A study done at primary health care settings in Switzerland in 2003 revealed that both bupropion and nicotine patch were cost-effective. The study was performed on two cohorts of heavy smokers; one group received only counselling from a GP, the second group received additional pharmacotherapy. At the end of the study, bupropion and the patch were found as the most cost-effective treatments, followed by, in descending order, spray, inhaler and lastly gum[3]. After the introduction of varenicline, this drug was also evaluated and found to be cost-effective.

The cost of smoking was calculated to be USD 193 billion in the US annually, including USD 97 billion due to lost productivity and USD 96 billion in smoking-related health care expenses[4]. The direct cost of smoking to the UK NHS was GBP 5.2 billion[5], and the EU Member States' total direct and indirect costs were estimated as being between € 97.7 billion and € 130.3 billion per annum[6].

In a workplace-based smoking cessation intervention, twelve months cost-saving was calculated as USD 541 for varenicline, USD 151 for bupropion and USD 82 for brief counselling[7 8].

A recent meta-analysis carried out in the USA concluded that smoking cessation counselling with supportive contact after discharge is potentially cost-effective and may reduce the incidence of smoking and its associated adverse health events and social costs. Using the data from a meta-analysis of randomized trials, the investigators developed a hypothetical US cohort of smokers hospitalized with acute myocardial infarction and evaluated the cost-effectiveness of smoking cessation counselling coupled with follow-up supportive contact. Its cost-effectiveness was USD 540 per quitting patient in programme costs, USD 4350 per life-year saved and USD 5050 per QALY saved, when all health care costs are considered[9].

Smoking is the most important risk factor for the development and also for the clinical course of COPD. Therefore, smoking cessation is particularly important for this group. Two recent studies performed in the Netherlands showed that smoking cessation was cost-effective among patients with COPD. In a systematic review of nine randomized controlled trials on smoking cessation intervention in COPD patients, it was found that average 12-month continuous abstinence rates were estimated to be 1.4% for usual care, 2.6% for minimal counselling, 6.0% for intensive counselling and 12.3% for pharmacotherapy. Compared with usual care, the costs per quality-adjusted life year (QALY) gained for minimal counselling; intensive counselling and pharmacotherapy were € 16,900, € 8200 and € 2400 respectively[10]. The other study was designed to determine the cost-effectiveness of a high-intensity smoking cessation programme (Smoke Stop Therapy; SST) versus a medium-intensity treatment (Minimal Intervention Strategy for lung patients [LMIS]) for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease outpatients. At the end of the study, it was found that the health care cost of SST including the costs of the smoking cessation programme was € 581, versus € 595 in the LMIS. The SST is also associated with a lower average number of exacerbations (0.38 v. 0.60) and hospitalisation days (0.39 v. 1) per patient and a higher number of quitters (20 v. 9) at lower total costs. This leads to a dominance of the SST compared with the LMIS[11].

In a recent study carried out in Massachusetts, USA, it was found that comprehensive smoking cessation services result in substantial savings for Medicaid programmes. Comprehensive smoking cessation services including pharmacotherapy, counselling and outreach cost about USD 183 per programme participant in 2010, and estimated savings were USD 571 per participant. This finding indicates that every USD 1 cost in the programme was associated with USD 3.12 in medical savings[12].

References

1 *Cromwell J, Bartosch WJ, Fiore MC, Hasselblad V, Baker T, Cost-effectiveness of the Clinical Practice Recommendations in the AHCPR Guideline for Smoking Cessation, JAMA. 1997;278(21):1759-1766. doi: 10.1001/jama.1997.03550210057039*

2 *Jonsson at.al., Simvastatin after myocardial infarction, Eur. Heart Jour., 1996, 17:1001; Caro et.al., Pravastatin Primary Prevention, Brit. Med Jour., 1997, 315: 1577 --- The Incidental Economist*

3 *Cornuz J, Pinge C, Gilbert A, Paccaud F., Cost-effectiveness analysis of the first-line therapies for nicotine dependence. Eur J Clin Pharmacol. 2003 Jul;59(3):201-6, Epub 2003 May 21*

4 *Armour BS, Finkelstein EA, Fiebelkorn IC. State-level Medicaid expenditures attributable to smoking. Prev Chronic Dis 2009 Jul; 6 (3): 1-10*

5 *Allender S, Balakrishnan R, Scarborough P, et al. The burden of smoking-related ill health in the UK. Tob Control 2009 Aug; 18 (4): 262-7*

6 *World Health Organization. The European tobacco control report 2007 [online]. Available from URL: http://www.euro.who.int/document/e89842.pdf [Accessed 2009 Sep 24]*

7 *Jackson KC 2nd, Nahoopii R, Said Q, et al. An employer based cost-benefit analysis of a novel pharmacotherapy agent for smoking cessation. J Occup Environ Med 2007 Apr; 49 (4): 453-60*

8 *Keating GM, and Katherine A. Lyseng-Williamson KAL., Varenicline: A Pharmacoeconomic Review of its Use as an Aid to Smoking Cessation, Pharmacoeconomics 2010; 28 (3): 231-254*

9 *Joseph A. Ladapo, MD, PhD; Farouc A. Jaffer, MD, PhD; Milton C. Weinstein, PhD; Erika Sivarajan Froelicher, RN, PhD, Projected Cost-effectiveness of Smoking Cessation Interventions in Patients Hospitalized With Myocardial Infarction, Arch Intern Med. 2011;171(1):39-45*

10 *Hoogendoorn M, Feenstra TL, Hoogenveen RT. Rutten-van Mölken MPMH., Long-term effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of smoking cessation interventions in patients with COPD, Thorax 2010;65:711-718 doi:10.1136/thx.2009.131631*

11 *Christenhusz LCA, Prenger R, Pieterse ME, Seydel ER, and van der Palen J, Cost-effectiveness of an Intensive Smoking Cessation Intervention for COPD Outpatients, Nicotine Tob Res (2011) doi: 10.1093/ntr/ntr263, First published online: December 16, 2011*

12 *Richard P, West K, Ku L (2012) The Return on Investment of a Medicaid Tobacco Cessation Program in Massachusetts. PLoS ONE 7(1): e29665.doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0029665*

5.3 Recommendations about implementation of smoking cessation guidelines

A good guideline is really only useful if it is disseminated and implemented in the target population, in accordance with best practice standards.

The most reliable example in Europe to illustrate this applies to the NHS Stop Smoking Services in the UK. By developing a NICE guidance implementation algorithm, smoking cessation guidelines were transformed into a valuable tool for all categories of professionals involved in assisting smokers. Thus, guidance can help national organizations to meet worldwide recognized scientific and national governments' standards for public health, determine national and local organizations within the public sector to meet government indicators and targets to improve health, reduce health inequalities and promote well-being within communities[1].

Guidelines should be implemented to apply to services delivered within primary and secondary care, pharmacies, local authorities and workplaces, but also to apply to training bodies and health policy-makers.

In order to achieve this goal, the implementation process needs a project leadership structure and a step-by-step approach to do the following:

- ensure that all relevant groups are aware of the guidelines and are provided with copies or with access to websites, print-outs etc.;
- working with the relevant specialist groups to compare their current activity with the recommendations contained in the guidelines[1];
- identify which organizations/hospitals, etc. will need to change their current way of working in order to align with guidelines and build partnerships with existing networks (such as regional tobacco control networks);
- identify key areas to help implementation, such as local referral pathways to cessation centres, increasing the number of practitioners receiving training and focus on hard-to-reach communities;
- assess how much it will cost to implement the guidelines;
- build an action plan for guideline implementation by working together with local actors and specialists.

To ensure effective implementation, all relevant commissioning, public health, local authority and local priority-setting organizations and representatives should sign up to the action plan, e.g. via a local area agreement. Implementation of the guidance should be reviewed and monitored and results fed back to the most pertinent trust board. Also, it is very important to share experience about guideline implementation with other organizations within various professional or scientific events.[2]

In an experimental study that tested the effectiveness of dissemination interventions to improve implementation of smoking cessation guidelines in maternal and children's health clinics, Manfredi et al. reported post-dissemination improvements over baseline in the sub-population of smokers reporting receipt of provider advice, self-help booklets, videos, posters and an adjunct intervention. Nevertheless, the most significant increases were noticed in the proportion of smokers receiving both booklet and an adjunct intervention[3].

References

1 *NICE public health guidance 10: Smoking cessation services in primary care, pharmacies, local authorities and workplaces, particularly for manual working groups, pregnant women and hard to reach communities, www.nice.org.uk/page.aspx?o=502591*

2 *NICE Public Guidance 10, Smoking Cessation Services: Implementation Advice, 2008, available online at: http://www.nice,org,uk/PH010, http://guidance.nice.org.uk/PH10/ImplementationAdvice/doc/English-*

3 *Manfredi C., Chol Y.I., Warneckel R., Saunders S., Sullivan M., Dissemination strategies to improve implementation of the PHS smoking cessation guideline in MCH public health clinics: experimental evaluation results and contextual factors, Health Educ Res., (2011) 26(2): 348-360, first published online 11 March 2011, doi:10.1093/her/cyr010*

5.4 Recommended Scientific Literature Resources on Smoking Cessation1

1 Hoogendoorn M, Feenstra TL, Hoogenveen RT. Rutten-van Mölken MPMH., Long-term effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of smoking cessation interventions in patients with COPD, Thorax 2010;65:711-718 doi:10.1136/thx.2009.131631

2 Thorax in focus: Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease, Thorax 2012;67:2 171-176

3 Changes in Mortality Among US Adults with COPD in Two National Cohorts recruited from 1971-1975 and 1988-1994 Chest 2012;141:1 101-110

4 Cost- effectiveness of an Intensive Smoking Cessation Intervention for COPD Outpatients Nicotine Tob Res 2011;0:2011 ntr263v1-ntr263

5 The European Union conference on chronic respiratory disease: purpose and conclusions Eur Respir J 2011;37:4 738-742

6 Cornuz J, Pinge C, Gilbert A, Paccaud F., Cost-effectiveness analysis of the first-line therapies for nicotine dependence. Eur J Clin Pharmacol. 2003 Jul;59(3):201-6, Epub 2003 May 21

PART THREE

European Standards For Accreditation Of Tobacco Cessation Services And Of Training In Tobacco Cessation

6.0

Recommendations to train health professional in the treatment of tobacco use and dependence and quality standards for tobacco cessation specialists and tobacco cessation services

This chapter describes standards for training all health professionals and standards for tobacco cessation services (target professional categories to deliver smoking cessation interventions, general standards for training in smoking cessation treatments, authorized training bodies and their responsibility towards cessation, training format and evaluation).

It is widely recognized that good governance is required in the health care sector. The general public, patients' organizations and third party payers want to have more objective assessments of health service quality. Countries have taken different approaches to maintaining quality and improving standards. In some countries, professional organizations and provider associations try to exercise quality control over members to improve standards for care, often without input from government or society. In other countries, the state exercises rigid control over the health sector, leaving almost no scope for professional judgment – resulting in defensive medicine and unnecessary referrals to higher levels of care. The challenge is to balance the roles of health professionals, government policymakers, members of the public, and other stakeholders in enhancing the quality of, and setting the standards for, the health sector.

Literature review identified multiple sources of directives, guidance and evidence which could be translated into explicit statements of requirements for health services in Europe.

Council of Europe	
Recommendation (1997) 5	Protection of medical data
Safe Medication Practices (P-SPPH/SAFE) 2006	Safe medication practices
Resolution ResAP (2003)3	Nutritional care in hospitals
Recommendation (2000) 5	Patient participation
Recommendation Rec(2006)7	Patient safety
WHO	
WHO-HEN-OBS 2009	physicians' skills
Standards for health promotion in hospitals 2004	health promotion
Checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population	surgical safety
A performance assessment framework for hospitals : PATH	performance indicators
EC directives	
Directive 2005/36/EC	Professional qualifications
Directive 1995/46/EC	Processing of personal data
Directive 2011/24/EU	Patients' rights in crossborder healthcare
EC research	
Development of pan -European standards and criteria for the inspection of (EU-Blood -Inspection)	blood establishments
European quality system indicators and methodology on organ donation (ODEQUS project)	Organ donation
Antibiotic Resistance and Prescribing in European Children (ARPEC)	Antibiotic use
Developing Rational Use of Medicines in Europe (DRUM Europe)	Use of medicines
PROSAFE- Promoting patient safety and quality improvement in critical care	Critical care
Defining best practices in palliative care in Europe (PPP)	Palliative care
International Programme for Resource Use in Critical Care (IPOC) -- a methodology and initial results of cost and provision in four European countries.	Critical care
Improving patient safety of hospital care through day surgery (DAYSAFE)	Day surgery
European Union (EU) Care and Management of Services for Older People in Europe Network (CARMEN)	Services for Older People
Best Practice in Access, Quality and Appropriateness of Health Services for Immigrants in Europe (EUGATE)	Minority populations
NGOs	
European Resusci tation Council guidelines 2010	Resuscitation
Union Européenne des Médecins Spécialistes (UEMS)	Quality of medical practice
UEMS Basle Declaration	Continuing Professional Development
European charter of Patients' rights www.activecitizenship.net	Patients' rights
EACH Charter for children	Patients' rights
International Association of Gerontology: The Old Person´s Charter Of Standards	Patients' rights
European Society of Radiology (ESR). Risk management in radiology, 2004	Radiology
European Hospital and Healthcare Federation (HOPE), October 2010	Chronic diseases
CEN	
EN ISO 22870:2006 (POCT) - Requirements for quality and competence (ISO 22870:2006)	Chiropractic
EN 16224:2012 Healthcare provision by chiropractors	Point-of-care testing
WS068001 Health care services - Quality criteria for health checks	Health checks
00414001 Osteopathic healthcare provision	Osteopathy
CEN/TC 403 Aesthetic surgery services	Aesthetic surgery
ISO 9001 interpretation for health services	Quality management systems
National Standards Authority of Ireland: Health Services Application of ISO 9002 in a hospital environment	
SGS Yarsley International (SGS) in UK: BS EN ISO 9000: Guidance notes for its application to hospitals	
Swedish Standards Institute, Guide (CEN/TS 15224)	
DNV National Integrated Accreditation for Healthcare Organizations - Interpretive Guidelines	
CEN/TC 362 Healthcare services - Quality management systems	

Independent reviews in the USA and Australia have emphasized the need for active collaboration between public and private agencies in order to reconcile the conflict between top-down regulation and bottom-up development. A partnership between the public sector and any accreditation agency is essential for accreditation to succeed.

References

Toolkit for Accreditation Programmes © 2004: The International Society for Quality In Health Care, 212 Clarendon Street, East Melbourne, Victoria 3002, Australia

Shaw CD, Jelfs E, Franklin P. Implementing recommendations for safer hospitals in Europe: the SANITAS project. EuroHealth July 2012 (in press)

6.1 Recommendations for criteria of standard smoking cessation expertise training

Discussions concerning assistance for smokers to quit must be a mandatory chapter of medical curricula. Training of all categories of professionals involved in this area must be done through training courses given by authorized experts in the field.

In a review published by Nancy Rigotti et al. in 2008, the authors tried to obtain data on the present status quo of smoking cessation trainings in as many countries as possible. Even though the data collected were heterogeneous, by highlighting the multitude of approaches and staff categories as well as the variety of studying formats and funding solutions. This investigation was a very valuable one, since at global level it drew attention to the need for standards in specialized training for the treatment of tobacco dependence.

The target population for smoking cessation training is represented by all smoking cessation service advisers and co-ordinators: doctors, nurses, midwives, pharmacists, dentists, psychologists or quitline counsellors and others who advise people on how to quit smoking.

All European authorized bodies responsible for the education and training of healthcare workers who advise people to quit smoking should take action in order to:

- train all frontline healthcare staff to offer brief advice on smoking cessation in accordance with best available guidance and to make referrals, where necessary and possible, to available publicly funded smoking cessation services;
- ensure that training on how to support people to quit smoking is part of the core curriculum for healthcare undergraduates and postgraduates;
- ensure and maintain availability of training and continuing professional development;
- train all stop smoking service practitioners by using a programme that complies with the best available standards for training in smoking cessation treatments;
- provide additional, specialized training for those working with specific groups, e.g. people with mental health problems, hospitalized patients and pregnant women who smoke;
- encourage and train healthcare professionals to ask patients about all forms of tobacco use and advise them of the dangers of exposure to second-hand smoke.

Such authorized training bodies vary across Europe from accredited universities to other governmental or recognized national training structures.

The training standard for smoking cessation covers two main areas: knowledge and skills. The standard applies to the content of the programmes and the intended learning outcomes of trainings.

The UK NHS standard focused on the minimum elements and modules for delivering smoking cessation interventions at three different levels (brief opportunistic, intensive one-to-one and groups). The training standard provides guidance to trainers over what should be included in the training of smoking cessation advisers. The training format is different for each level, in general the brief opportunistic advice should correspond to curricula for medical university graduates, while intensive one-to-one and groups are based on medicine/psychology/nursing university postgraduates.

The term *minimum content requirements* refers to those elements of the programme that are considered essential to achieve the standard. Each objective is marked K or S to indicate whether it is knowledge or skills-based. This distinction is important because they require different forms of assessment. The former can be assessed by means of written tests at the end of a course, while the latter is more difficult and may require a practical test or observation of practice following the course.

Table 15: Chapter of NHS tobacco cessation assessment training

1. Evidence of attendance of the training course;
2. Continuous assessment of course work (formative assessment);
3. Testing of key knowledge and skills upon completion of the course;
4. In-service assessment of skills and knowledge, through observation;
5. Provision of evidence of learning and of application to practice through a portfolio of continuing professional development.

6.2 Recommendations to develop smoking cessation curricula for medical university graduates in Europe

Rationale

Tobacco use is one of the most important public health problems, killing more than 6 million people globally, and this number is set to increase to 8 million at 2030. In Europe alone tobacco kills some 500,000 people every year. Research has shown that half of current smokers will die due to tobacco-related health issues, many of whom will die prematurely[1]. Besides this death toll, tobacco use harms the environment and has an important economic burden. Therefore, there is an urgent need to control tobacco use and reduce the number of smokers. One of the approaches to this end is to help smokers to quit. Many countries implement successful tobacco control programmes, including treatment of patients, and have reduced tobacco use and death toll due to tobacco use[1].

Content of training programme

- tobacco epidemic in Europe and globally;
- factors initiating tobacco use;
- pharmacological basis of tobacco dependence;
- health hazards due to tobacco use;
- other (e.g. environmental, economic etc.) consequences of tobacco use;
- approaches for tobacco control;
- physician's role in tobacco control;
- tobacco control legislation.

Training methods

Training is theoretical during the first years of medical school, and more practical exercises are done during clinical studies (years 4 to 6). The duration of the theoretical training is 10-12 hours (minimum), integrated in the curriculum of first three years (pre-clinical period) of medical studies. Class lectures, small group discussions, panel discussions or case examples are used for theoretical training. The aim of class training is to increase awareness among students to develop an awareness of tobacco-related issues. During the clinical training period, more case studies can be discussed to develop an "anti-smoking" attitude and behaviour. It should be stressed that all physicians should inquire as to the smoking behaviour of all patients (including the smoking behaviour of parents of juvenile patients) and they should advise and help smokers to quit. Therefore, some case studies and treatment of tobacco dependence is discussed during the clinical phase.

Table 16: Details of the programme

GENERAL AIMS	TARGETS	Period and Level (*)		
		Preclinical	Clinical	Internship
Information on tobacco use prevalence and factors for initiation	Basic epidemiological properties of tobacco use (person, place, time trends etc.)	B2		
Information on health hazards of tobacco use	Composition of tobacco smoke and effects on health	B1		
	Effects of smoking on respiratory system	B1	B2	
	Effects of smoking on cardiovascular system	B1	B2	
	Effects of smoking on cancer and hematopoietic system	B1		
	Effects of smoking on urogenital system	B1		
	Effects of smoking on pregnancy and children	B1		
Tobacco dependence and its importance for individuals and population	Neurobiological basis of tobacco dependence	B1	B2	
	Cognitive and behavioural aspects of tobacco dependence	B1	B2	
Environmental effects of tobacco use	Indoor air quality and pollutants	B1		
	Environmental pollution, fire hazards	B1		
Social and economic effects of tobacco use	Effects on individuals	B2		
	Effects on communaity	B2		
Legislation on tobacco control	International level (FCTC Framework Convention on Tobacco Control)	B2		
	National level (national legislation)	B2		
Tobacco control concept and its strategies	MPOWER strategies	B2		
	Relevant national legislation(s), i.e. National Tobacco Control Programme	B2		
Physician's role for tobacco control and relevant behaviour	Non-smoking behaviour as a role model	B2	B2 D2	B3 D3
	Help smokers to quit, implementing 5A and 5R principles	B1	B3 D3	B3 D3
	Evidence-based methods of quitting		B2	
	Cessation in clinical practice			B3
	Prevention of relapse			B3
	Advocacy and leadership for tobacco control	B2	B3 D3	B3 D3
	Beware of and combat tobacco industry manipulations	B2	B3 D3	B3 D3
	Smoking cessation in specific population: surgery, COPD, cardiac, psychiatric disorders			D3
	Role of media in tobacco control	B2		
Tobacco control in daily life and work with relevant institutions	Governmental and non-governmental institutions in tobacco control	B2		

PT.1

PT.2

(*)Definitions of Levels

Cognitive field
B1: Know (recall, count, define), e.g. knowledge of prevalence of tobacco use, factors effecting prevalence; list the health effects of tobacco use by organs and systems.

B2: Understand, implement, analyze, evaluate, e.g. biological and psychological mechanisms of health effects of tobacco use, explain environmental effects and economic burden of tobacco use.

B3: Using knowledge of B2 in implementing in real situations (on patients) (taking history, evaluating and deciding), e.g. implement 5As, offer help to smoker, give information on different treatment options.

Perceptive field
D1: Awareness, e.g. know marketing methods of tobacco industry.
D2: Attitude, e.g. consider the marketing methods of the tobacco industry and the importance of counteracting them.
D3: Behaviour, e.g. make a plan to counteract the marketing methods of the tobacco industry and implement plan.

Evaluation
The effect of the programme is evaluated through pre- and post-tests. A pre-test is given to students before the programme begins (i.e. first year), and a post-test before graduation from school (i.e. final year). The pre- and post-tests comprise multiple-choice questions specific to the targets of the training programme. In addition, written and oral feed-back from students and teachers is given after each course. The students' names are not recorded; group performance is evaluated.

6.3 Recommendations to develop smoking cessation curricula for medical university postgraduates in Europe – Certificate Programme

Rationale

Tobacco use is one of the most important public health problems, killing more than 6 million people globally, and this number is set to increase to 8 million at 2030[1]. In Europe alone tobacco kills 500,000 people every year. Research has shown that half of current smokers will die due to tobacco-related health issues, many of whom will die prematurely[1]. Besides this death toll, tobacco use harms the environment and has an important economic burden. Therefore, there is great need to control tobacco use to reduce the number of smokers. One of the approaches to this end is to help smokers to quit.

Many countries implement successful tobacco control programmes, including treatment of patients, and have reduced tobacco use and death toll due to tobacco use[1].

Aims of training programme

The aim of the training programme is to teach prevention, diagnosis and treatment of tobacco dependence to the participants. By the end of the training, the participants are expected to be able to operate a smoking cessation centre. To achieve this aim, the following topics are discussed within the scope of the programme:

- tobacco epidemic, in Europe and globally, including national statistics;
- factors initiating tobacco use;
- pharmacological basis of tobacco dependence;
- health hazards of tobacco use;
- other (i.e. environmental, economic etc.) consequences of tobacco use;
- approaches for tobacco control;
- physician's role in tobacco control;
- tobacco control legislation (international and national);
- tobacco control services in the country;
- establishing and operating a smoking cessation centre.

Training methods

The programme is conducted in two parts: distance learning and face-to-face learning. The teaching material is available on the web page, and participants are able to access the web page using their password for a defined number of days. They are expected to complete the reading materials and take an examination upon completion. Those who pass the examination receive a two-day face-to-face training. This programme is organized by the Ministry of Health or authorized universities. The maximum number of participants is 25.

Details of the face-to-face training programme:

- pre-test, participants' expectations, programme training targets;
- epidemiology of tobacco use, national figures and trends;
- tobacco use among special groups: children and youth, women, pregnant women, patients with morbidities, health personnel;
- tobacco dependence, mechanisms, measuring the level of dependency: Fagerström Test for Nicotine

Dependence (FTND), European Medical Association Smoking and Health (EMASH) criteria;
- approaches to smokers: 5As and 5Rs;
- resistant/problem cases, heavy smokers, light smokers, smokers with comorbidities etc.;
- psychosocial support;
- pharmacological treatment, including NRT;
- legislation: tobacco control legislation, legislation for tobacco control centres (physical capacity, manpower etc.);
- case studies, role-play etc.;
- visit to a cessation centre;
- post-test and evaluation of training, participants' recommendations for future programmes.

Evaluation

Success is evaluated by means of pre- and post-tests and successful participants receive certification by the Ministry of Health. Oral feed-back is also given. Certified physicians are entitled to set up and operate a smoking cessation centre.

Training programme for chest physicians

The ERS had published a monograph on smoking cessation in patient with COPD in 2007[2] and a new version will be soon available. Table 17 reports on the Turkish experience.

Table 17: An example of a training programme on smoking cessation for health professionals in Turkey

The programme was conducted by the Turkish Thoracic Society with financial support from the International Pfizer Foundation (Tobacco Control and Policy Micro-Grants). The standardized "modular" training programme was prepared by the members of Tobacco Control Working Group of the Turkish Thoracic Society. Then a group of 40 chest physicians were trained as trainers, forming the central training team. The training programme was made accessible to all members of the Society via electronic media. A total of 765 participants completed the e-training module. The aim of this e-course was to integrate the first two As (Ask and Advise) of the 5A principles into their daily clinical practice. At the end of each module, participants answered the questions on the main points of the module. After completing the e-training course, participants wishing to improve their practice attended a face-to-face training lasting one day (in fact all 765 participants attended the face-to-face training). These training programmes were conducted by the members of the central training team in 18 provinces of Turkey. At the end of these field training programmes, participants developed their capacity to deal with smokers and help them quit by implementing scientific methods of smoking cessation. All participants rated the programme as very good and good with regard to both the content and the relevance of the course.

References

1 *MPOWER WHO Global Tobacco Control Report, 2008*

2 *P. Tønnesen, L. Carrozzi, K.O. Fagerstrom", C. Gratziou, C. Jimenez-Ruiz,S. Nardinie, G. Viegi, C. Lazzaro, I.A. Campell, E. Dagli and R. West ERS TASK FORCE Smoking cessation in patients with respiratory diseases: a high priority, integral component of therapy Eur Respir J 2007; 29: 390–417*

6.4 Recommendations to develop smoking cessation curricula for other categories of professionals involved in delivering smoking cessation in Europe: psychologists, nurses, health policy-makers

Besides doctors, all categories of personnel working in tobacco cessation centres or involved in assisting smokers need to have basic knowledge and skills about treating tobacco use and dependence. This is vital to ensure best practices for quitting tobacco. A basic smoking cessation training module is thus recommended for: nurses, midwives, psychologists, facilitators, social workers and pharmacists or any other category of staff assisting smokers to quit, depending on the regulations in force in each country.

Curricula should comprise minimum teaching content about tobacco-related disorders, the neurobiology of nicotine addiction, tobacco dependence (to address pshychological and psychosocial levels), smoking and quitting processes, types of cessation interventions, assessment of smokers and evidence-based tobacco use therapies.

Training needs to be supported by governmental systems, which ensure that health professionals have access to it. This is an issue for national health authorities' commissioners and managers, who should fund smoking cessation training as a core health care activity. In order to better understand these needs and better design such programmes, we strongly advise that a minimum smoking cessation training module should also be offered to professionals in positions of authority. By acquiring elementary notions about tobacco-related morbidity and mortality and also about the cost-effectiveness of tobacco prevention and cessation therapy, health policy-makers will become more aware of the magnitude of the problem and will set priorities accordingly in order to improve the situation.

Training level 2 is suitable for all health professionals. Training level 1 is designed for those wishing to become tobacco cessation specialists.

Recommendations

- Smoking and smoking cessation should be part of the core curriculum of the basic training for all health professionals working with smokers.
- Training should be a core part of a smoking cessation programme for all health authorities. Protected time and funding should be built into this programme (level of evidence B).
- Smoking cessation should be funded and prioritized within existing training budgets (level of evidence B)[1].

References

1 *Smoking cessation clinical guidelines for health professionals, Thorax 1998;53 (Suppl 5, Part 1):S1*

6.5. Training standards for tobacco cessation clinicians

Background

Tobacco cessation is often a complex treatment, and there are many different training methods for cessation skills. Although tobacco dependence has many characteristics in common wherever in the world it is described, the environment and culture surrounding the user may differ substantially. Health care systems may also differ, both regarding their resources and their priorities. In the following, tobacco users are referred to as smokers, as smoking tobacco is the most prevalent form of tobacco product. Cessation of other tobacco products is much less well researched, but the methods used for smoking cessation are usually applied when dependent users of other tobacco products require assistance with quitting. Tobacco cessation does not necessarily have to be part of the health care service, but the training scheme proposed here is targeted at health professionals.

To train smoking cessation skills in clinicians who are able to devote time and resources to smoking cessation, including follow-up time of at least six months.

Content of training

Training is offered over three days:

1. Basic certificate (2 days) In order to qualify, presence is mandatory for the first two days of the course. Content: 50% theory, 50% practice (behavioural-cognitive therapy motivational interviewing and practice of tobacco cessation).
2. Advanced certificate (1 day follow-up) In order to qualify for the advanced certificate, the following is required in addition to the basic certificate:
   - one day (3rd day) of follow-up three to six months after basic training (cf. above);
   - a written test of knowledge, about 30 minutes, starting on day 3;
   - 3 patient cases, written clinical reports observing a template;
   - 3 supervised sessions in group or individual counselling (live or by telephone).

The advanced certificate is awarded when all parts are successfully completed, i.e. 2+1 days of training, the written test, three written patient cessation records (of which at least one is followed up for 2 months) plus three supervised cases (group or individual, live or by telephone). The advanced certificate must show that the training has been performed observing national standards for cessation training (cf. below). A special logotype can be issued to prove that the training has followed the national standard (including a detailed description). A certificate of the basic training, if appropriate, should preferably be less elaborate and should be clearly distinct from the advanced certificate.

Mandatory content of training curriculum

Content of basic training (days 1 and 2)

T=theory and P=practice
T Introduction: An overview of the major health consequences of tobacco use, costs, dependence, and an overview of the different aspects of tobacco prevention and tobacco use.
T Risk of tobacco use in more detail and benefits of stopping.
T Methods for tobacco cessation (Cochrane Library, www.treatobacco.net), methods for evaluation of outcome.
P Methods for counselling and training sessions.
P Tobacco cessation in practice, individual counselling procedures, relapse prevention, follow-up and training sessions.
T Tobacco dependence, withdrawal, pharmacotherapy.
T Methods for different settings/groups, materials and other resources.
T Optional content, such as: legislation, tobacco advertising and/or global issues.

Content of follow up (day 3)

Compulsory items:
1. Knowledge test: 0.5 h, 10 questions, 5 multiple choice + 5 essay questions.
2. Group treatment: Discussion with questions and answers for 2.5 h on planning, the role of the group leader, structure of the meetings, issues of recruitment and composition of the group, documentation.
3. Individual treatment: Exchange of experiences/discussion in small groups from patient cases and from case studies provided by the students (2 h).

Optional discussions:
4. Issues of the day (1 h), i.e. new regional survey results, water pipe smoking, other tobacco products, new legislation, ETS, pharmacological therapy, youth/schools, gender, global issues, and new material.

Evaluation of training

The participants should be given an opportunity to evaluate (a) the two first days of the training and then (b) all three days to cover the whole course.

I. Training modules that should be part of the evaluation of days 1 and 2.
Questions about:

1. Background, setting/profession.
2. Content of theoretical part.
3. Content of practical part.

II. Training modules that should be part of the evaluation of day 3.
Questions about:
1. Content of theoretical part, day 3
2. Content of practical part, day 3
3. Coaching between days 1-2, and day 3 – organisation and content.
4. Training as a whole
5. How many patients have you treated since the basic training (days 1 and 2)?

Material to use in the training:

- Set of questions for the knowledge test
- Templates for responding to home lessons and for recording of patients
- Written patient cases to use in discussions
- Information (presentation) on pharmaceuticals
- Information (presentation) on how to follow up and evaluate reactivation.

Clinicians who want to reactivate dated skills should be offered day 3 of the above plus coaching and should be asked to present three written patient cases, which can qualify them for award of the advanced certificate.

Authorization to conduct training courses for tobacco cessation

A national board of experts should be established with the authority to evaluate proposals for courses. A detailed programme and a description of the competencies of the teachers and instructors must be examined by the national board. After any necessary adjustments a new course can be approved.

Remarks

The above is based on Swedish training standards. The national board of experts in Sweden has emerged from an initiative taken by several NGOs with extensive practical and academic experience in smoking cessation. After some 80 courses over the past 20 years it is evident that physicians rarely take such courses, accounting for only 2% to 3% of participants. Nurses are the largest group in this country.

Efforts to devise more elaborate training programmes have not improved the attendance of doctors. Experience from Canada reports a similar attendance structure[1].

References

1 Herie M, Connolly H, Voci S, Dragonetti R, Selby P. Changing practitioner behavior and building capacity in tobacco cessation treatment: the TEACH project. Patient Educ Couns. 2012 Jan;86(1):49-56

6.6 Quality standards in tobacco dependence treatment

Definition

A Tobacco Dependence Treatment Specialist (TDTS)[1] is a professional who possesses the skills, knowledge and training to provide effective, evidence-based interventions for tobacco dependence treatment, across a range of intensities. The TDTS may have various professional affiliations and may work in a variety of settings including, but not limited to, hospitals, community health centres, health maintenance organizations (HMOs), medical and dental practices, educational settings, social service agencies, public health organizations, tobacco treatment centres, telephone quitlines, drug abuse treatment programmes and mental health centres. The TDTS may engage not only in providing treatment, but also in educating others (health care professionals, administrators, scientists, smokers and non-smokers) about tobacco dependence treatments.

Role and responsibilities of the Tobacco Dependence Treatment Specialist

Tobacco dependence – knowledge and education

Provide clear and accurate information about tobacco use, strategies for quitting, and the scope of the health impact on the population, the causes and consequences of tobacco consumption.

1. Describe the prevalence and patterns of tobacco use, dependence and cessation in the country and region in which the treatment is provided, and how such rates vary across demographic, economic and cultural sub-groups.
2. Explain the role of treatment for tobacco use and dependence within a comprehensive tobacco control programme.
3. Utilize the findings of national reports, research studies and guidelines on tobacco dependence treatment.
4. Explain the societal and environmental factors that promote and inhibit the spread of tobacco use and dependence.
5. Explain the health consequences of tobacco use, but also the benefits of quitting and the basic mechanisms of the more common tobacco-induced disorders.
6. Describe how tobacco dependence develops and be able to explain the biological, psychological and social causes of tobacco dependence.
7. Summarize and be able to apply valid and reliable diagnostic criteria for tobacco dependence.
8. Describe the chronic relapsing nature of tobacco dependence, including typical relapse patterns and predisposing factors.
9. Provide information that is gender, age and culturally sensitive and appropriate to learning style and abilities.
10. Identify evidence-based treatment strategies and the pros and cons for each strategy.
11. Be able to debate alternative therapies such as harm reduction, hypnosis, acupuncture, cigarette tapering.
12. Demonstrate ability to access information on the above topics.

Counselling skills

Demonstrate effective application of counselling theories and strategies to establish a collaborative relationship and to facilitate client involvement in treatment and commitment to change.

1. Demonstrate effective counselling skills, such as active listening and empathy that facilitate the treatment process.
2. Demonstrate establishing a warm, confidential and non-judgmental counselling environment.
3. Describe and demonstrate use of an evidence-based method for brief interventions for treating tobacco use and dependence, as identified in current guidelines.
4. Describe the use of models of behaviour change including motivational interviewing, behavioural-cognitive therapy and supportive counselling.
5. Demonstrate the effective use of clinically sound strategies to enhance motivation and encourage commitment to change.
6. Demonstrate competences in at least one of the empirically supported counselling modalities such as individual, group and telephone counselling.

Assessment interview

Conduct an assessment interview to obtain comprehensive and accurate data needed for treatment planning.

1. Demonstrate the ability to conduct an intake assessment interview including:
   (a) tobacco use history;
   (b) validated measures of motivation to quit;
   (c) validated measures for assessing tobacco use and dependence;
   (d) current challenges and barriers to attaining permanent abstinence;

(e) current strengths to support abstinence;
(f) prior quit attempts including treatment experiences, successes and barriers;
(g) availability of social support systems;
(h) preferences for treatment;
(i) cultural factors influencing making a quit attempt.

2. Demonstrate the ability to gather basic medical history information and conduct a brief screening for psychiatric and substance abuse issues.
3. Describe when to consult with primary medical care providers and make appropriate referrals before treatment planning is implemented.
4. Describe the existing objective measures of tobacco use such as CO monitoring and cotinine level assessments.

Treatment planning

Demonstrate the ability to develop an individualized treatment plan using evidence-based treatment strategies.

1. In collaboration with the patient, identify specific and measurable treatment objectives.
2. Plan individualized treatments that account for patient assessment factors identified during the intake assessment and history gathering.
3. Collaboratively develop a treatment plan that uses evidence-based strategies to assist the patient in moving toward a quit attempt and/or continued abstinence from tobacco.
4. Describe a plan for follow-up to address potential issues including negative outcomes.
5. Demonstrate the process to make referrals to other health care providers or to recommend additional care.

Pharmacotherapy

Provide clear and accurate information about pharmacotherapy options available and their therapeutic use.

1. Describe the benefits of combining pharmacotherapy and counselling.
2. Provide information on correct use, efficacy, adverse events, contra-indications, known side effects and exclusions for all tobacco dependence medications approved by national regulatory agencies.
3. Identify information relevant to a client's current and past medical, psychiatric and smoking history (including past treatments) that may impact pharmacotherapy decisions.
4. Provide appropriate patient education for therapeutic choices and dosing for a wide range of

patient situations.
5. Communicate the symptoms, duration, incidence and magnitude of nicotine withdrawal.
6. Describe the use of combinations of medications and higher dose medications to enhance the probability of abstinence.
7. Identify second-line medications and be able to find information about them as needed.
8. Identify possible adverse reactions and complications related to the use of pharmacotherapy for tobacco dependence, making timely referrals to medical professionals/services. Demonstrate ability to address concerns about minor and/or temporary side effects of these pharmacotherapies.
9. Demonstrate ability to collaborate with other healthcare providers to co-ordinate the appropriate use of medications, especially in the presence of medical or psychiatric comorbidities.
10. Provide information about alternative therapies based upon recognized reviews of effectiveness.

Relapse prevention

Offer methods to reduce relapse and provide on-going support for tobacco-dependent persons.

1. Identify personal risk factors and incorporate into the treatment plan.
2. Describe strategies and coping skills that can reduce relapse risk.
3. Provide guidance in modifying the treatment plan to reduce the risk of relapse throughout the course of treatment.
4. Describe a plan for continued aftercare following initial treatment.
5. Describe how to make referrals to additional resources to reduce risk of relapse.
6. Implement treatment strategies for someone who has lapsed or relapsed.

Approaching difficult/special categories of smokers

Demonstrate competence in working with various population sub-groups and with those categories of smokers having special health problems.

1. Provide culturally competent counselling.
2. Describe specific treatment indications for special population groups (i.e. pregnant women, adolescents, young adults, elderly, hospitalized patients, those with comorbid psychiatric, chronic respiratory, etc. conditions).
3. Demonstrate an ability to respond to high-risk client situations.
4. Make effective treatment recommendations for non-cigarette tobacco users.
5. Describe recommendations for those exposed to environmental tobacco smoke pollution.

Documentation and evaluation

Describe and use methods for tracking individual progress, record-keeping, programme documentation, outcome measurement and reporting.

1. Maintain accurate records utilizing accepted coding practices that are appropriate to the setting in which services are provided.
2. Develop and implement a protocol for tracking client follow-up and progress.
3. Describe standardized methods of measuring recognized outcomes of tobacco dependence treatment for individuals and programmes.

Professional resources

Utilize resources available for client support and for professional education or consultation.

1. Describe resources (web-based, community, quitlines) available for continued support for tobacco abstinence of patients.
2. Identify community resources to refer any concomitant medical, psychiatric or psycho-social conditions.
3. Name and use peer-reviewed journals, professional societies, websites and newsletters related to tobacco dependence treatment and/or research.
4. Describe how patients can explore reimbursement for treatments.

Law and ethics

Consistently use a code of ethics and adhere to government regulations specific to the health care or work site setting.

1. Describe and use a code of ethics established by your professional discipline for tobacco dependence treatment specialists, if available.
2. Describe the implications and utilize the regulations that apply to the tobacco treatment setting (confidentiality, HIPAA, work site specific regulations).

Professional development

Assume responsibility for continued professional development and contributing to the development of others.

1. Maintain professional standards as required by professional license or certification.
2. Utilize the literature and other formal sources of information/inquiry to keep up to date in tobacco dependence treatment knowledge and skills.
3. Describe the implications of current research to the practice of tobacco dependence treatment.
4. Disseminate knowledge and findings about tobacco treatment with others through formal and informal channels.

References

1 ATTUD – Association for the Treatment of Tobacco Use and Dependence www.attud.org

6.7 Requirements for accreditation of specialized tobacco cessation service

Tobbacco cessation service (TCS)[1] indicates any place where a health professional practices to treat tobacco dependence as the goal or as one of the goals of the service.

According to the e.SCCAN estimate there are 2500 tobacco cessation services in Europe. All these services state that tobacco cessation is the only or one of the goals of the heath service. Tobacco cessation services have a role to do the following:

- treat tobacco dependence cases and focus on more difficult cases;
- educate/train health professionals about tobacco cessation;
- research/evaluate tobacco cessation interventions;
- disseminate good practices in smoking cessation among health professionals and the general population and eliminate bad practices;
- promote health.

6.7.1 Three levels of tobacco cessation services[2]

The definition of tobacco cessation services covers three sub-groups:

- tobacco cessation clinics;
- tobacco cessation specialist's practices;
- tobacco cessation counselling centres.

Specialized tobacco cessation units (STCU)

STCU is a centre dedicated to smoking cessation with a minimum of one doctor and two health professionals, one being a tobacco cessation specialist, with full availability of medication prescription and behavioural support, CO monitoring testing facilities for all patients, standard medical record keeping, standard procedures for follow-up and evaluation of the activity.

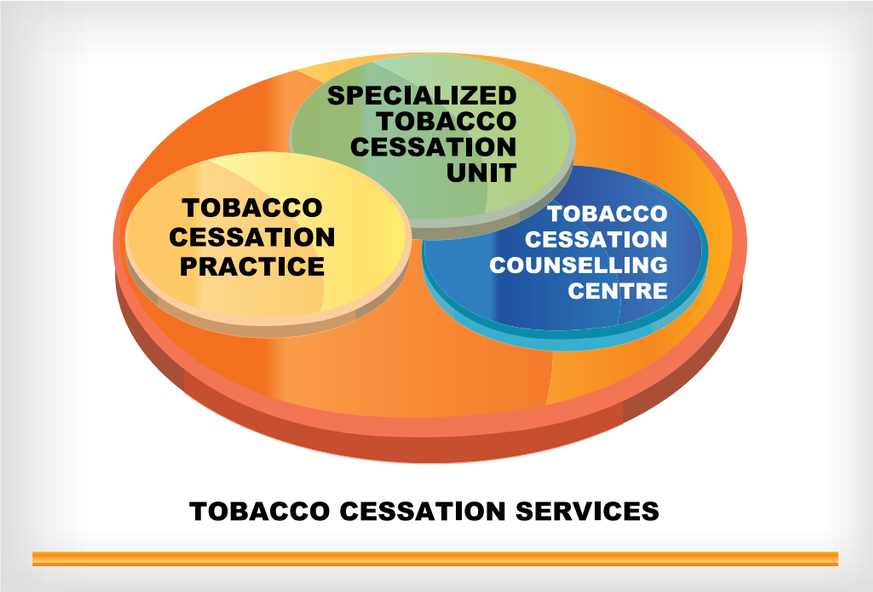
Tobacco cessation specialist's practice (TCSP)

TCSP is a medical practice dedicated in part or full time to tobacco dependence treatment with the ability to prescribe medication, but without the full range of options offered by a tobacco cessation clinic.

Tobacco cessation counselling centre (TCCC)

TCCC is a centre dedicated to tobacco dependence treatment, where the presence of a tobacco cessation specialist is required, but not the presence of a medical doctor. It usually has the presence of a psychologist, nurse or other health professional acting as counsellors. Prescription of medication is not provided, but advice on pharmacological support is available.

Figure 20: The three levels of tobacco cessation service (adapted from e.SCCAN)



Like all other places where tobacco cessation is performed, such as GP practices, pharmacies etc., TCS have to follow best practice guidelines for of tobacco dependence treatment.
In order to obtain accreditation as a specialized tobacco cessation service, it is compulsory to meet the requirements detailed below.

6.7.2 Accreditation of specialized tobacco cessation units

Centres accredited as specialized tobacco cessation units are strongly advised to have optimum human and material resources[3]. These units must demonstrate criteria of excellence in relation to healthcare, teaching and research.

Human resources

- According to scientific evidence a team of more than one health professional increases cessation success rates.

- A multi-disciplinary team including doctors, nurses, psychologists, dieticians is optimum to cover the needs of most tobacco users during cessation.
  - A tobacco (smoking) cessation specialist is needed in each tobacco cessation service. According to WHO, a tobacco cessation specialist is someone who is trained and paid to deliver skilled support to smokers who need help to quit smoking, over and above brief punctual advice; the personnel involved need not be medically trained.
  - Medical doctors may cover all tasks in the tobacco cessation service.
  - Non-medical health professionals may provide behavioural support and tobacco cessation training in a medical team or in a non-medical unit.
  - Non-health professionals trained in tobacco dependence may play a specific role under supervision.
  - Specialized health professionals such as midwives in maternity wards, anaesthetists in surgery, psychiatrics for tobacco users with mental disease, may play a specific role in specific populations.
- Staff has to be sufficient to ensure a first visit not later than three weeks after a request for tobacco dependence treatment has been received.

- The centre is staffed by a multidisciplinary team of healthcare professionals specialized in tobacco dependence treatment. Such professionals are defined as healthcare workers highly qualified in this field and expert in their capacity to prevent, diagnose and treat smoking/tobacco dependence, which work full time and are paid for these activities.

- It is necessary for the healthcare professionals who operate the specialized smoking cessation unit to be able to accredit adequate training in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of smoking/ tobacco dependence.

- Ideally, the centre should also have administrative personnel to attend to and channel patient calls and to maintain the corresponding patient records and conduct the relevant administrative functions.

- The availability of these resources must be adequately documented. Certification will be requested from some competent authority demonstrating the existence of a multidisciplinary team with the specified characteristics and working full time in the centre. Likewise, certification is required of adequate training in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of smoking.

Material resources

- Proprietary rooms available on a full time basis: consulting room, exploration room, administrative office, waiting room and meeting room.
- Computer-supported databases and files for specific documentation on smoking and tobacco consumption.
- Specific smoking/tobacco consumption clinical records.
- Clinical intervention protocols.
- Self-assisting material.
- Proprietary office material.
- Audio-visual projection material.
- Clinical material: stethoscope, blood pressure recorder, device to measure CO in exhaled air, spirometry, electrocardiography, patient height and body weight measuring systems (including calculation of body mass index, BMI). Samples or display of medication.
- Possibility of measuring nicotine or cotinine in body fluids.
- Dedicated contact phone number of the service.

The availability of these resources must be adequately documented. Certification is requested from the competent authority demonstrating the availability for own use of clinical material and computer-supported databases and files for specific documentation on smoking/tobacco consumption. The possibility of measuring nicotine and cotinine in body fluids must also be documented.

Presentation of a specific smoking clinical record is required, together with specific questionnaires, clinical intervention protocols and self-help materials.

Table 18: : Questionnaires for tobacco cessation services

Self-assessment questionnaires mandatory:
• Profile of tobacco use, • Tobacco dependence test: Fagerström test.
Self-assessment questionnaires recommended:
• Mood assessment questionnaire (HAD or other), • Questionnaire on motivation to quit and/or perceived barriers.
Non self-administered questionnaire:
• Questionnaire such as the Beck Depression Inventory (BDI).

Categories of tobacco users that should be referred to tobacco cessation services

High-risk tobacco user
The main role of tobacco cessation services is to ensure a high standard of treatment for high-risk tobacco users, such as pregnant women, smokers with planned elective surgery, smokers with underlying psychological, cardiovascular, respiratory diseases and cancer patients, tobacco users with other addiction (alcohol and other drugs), socially disadvantaged smokers and smokers who have a history of unsuccessful aided quit attempts.

All tobacco users
All tobacco users who need assistance in their quitting process could be referred to tobacco cessation services by health professionals, quitlines or social services or can access these services on their own.

Specific public
Tobacco cessation services may be specialized for one target group, such as pregnant women, adolescents or tobacco users addicted to other substances. In these cases the specificity of that tobacco cessation service has to be clearly stated.

Healthcare activities

Accreditation as a specialized smoking cessation unit is based mainly on quality health care criteria. The criteria defining quality in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of smoking/tobacco dependence are as follows:

Healthcare is to be provided in three formats:
- individualized,
- group,
- telephone-based.

The centres must have individualized, group and telephone-based management protocols. These protocols must contemplate a minimum of visits in the course of the follow-up, which should extend for at least 12 months after quit-date.
- In the case of individualized visits, the patients are seen at least six times, and each visit lasts no less than 15 minutes. The first visit will last no less than 30 minutes.
- In the case of group consultations, patients will be seen in the course of 5 to 9 group sessions with a duration of between 45 and 90 minutes.
- Telephone-based consultations should be conducted in those cases where the patient has difficulties to visit the centre, in those cases where only less intensive intervention is required, or in those cases where point and direct intervention is needed.

The healthcare activity is to be carried out by a multidisciplinary team of physicians, nurses and psychologists. All of them are to be qualified experts in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of smoking.

The healthcare activities of these units should not be confined to the actual centre; in effect, the professionals of the unit should be willing and capable to address and resolve the consultations made by other healthcare professionals treating tobacco users with specific difficulties.

Presentation is required of the necessary documentation demonstrating the existence of healthcare protocols that satisfy the commented characteristics. Documentation is to be presented, issued by the competent authorities, disclosing the following data: number of new patients seen per year (minimum required number = 300), number of check-ups carried out per year (minimum required number = 1000), number of CO measurements performed per year (minimum required number = 1000), number of determinations of nicotine and/or cotinine in body fluids made per year (minimum required number = 100), number of spirometric explorations made per year, and number of ECG studies made per year.

Tobacco cessation services respect international and national best practice guidelines for tobacco cessation. Tobacco cessation services respect general good practice in all procedures, respect the rights of patients and commit to data protection rules.

Likewise, documentation is to be presented, issued by the competent authorities, attesting co-ordination of activities of the centre with other centres or departments in aspects related to smoking prevention and treatment.

Table 19: Example of organization of smoking cessation visits

First visit:
• should be face-to-face and/or could take place in the frame of a group visit; • is the occasion to access the tobacco user, record tobacco use and to educate on tobacco products, health consequences of tobacco use and on cessation; • should be extensive: 30-60 minutes.

Follow-up visits:
• number of follow-up visits lie usually between 5 and 9 visits, e.g. at weeks 2, 4, 8, 12, 26 but other schemes are also possible, e.g. an additional visit at W1 or a visit after 1 year; • duration is generally 15-30 minutes; • may be improved by telephone support, Internet support and testing as well as non-planned visits; • have to be adapted in duration and support to the individual situation and needs

The tobacco cessation service should disseminate good practice of tobacco dependence treatment and tobacco prevention to other health services and to the public at large.

Teaching activities

- It is strongly recommended for the healthcare professionals at specialized smoking cessation units to have sufficient qualification and accreditation to conduct teaching activities related with the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of smoking in faculties of medicine, psychiatry and health sciences, as well as in nursing schools.

- These units should also be able to meet the training requirements of other healthcare departments. The professionals belonging to the unit should be able to impart training courses for the prevention and control of smoking, targeted to other healthcare professionals with less training in these areas.

- The specialized smoking cessation units must be prepared to accept the responsibility of providing training in the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of smoking for residents in training in the specialties of pneumology, family and community care medicine, preventive medicine and public health, or other clinical-surgical specialties, and also for residents in psychology.

Presentation is required of the necessary documentation demonstrating that some of the healthcare professionals working full time in the centre have the academic qualifications needed to teach undergraduates. Honorary collaborating lecturers, private university lecturers, contracted lecturers, associated professors, assistant university professors and university rectors will be especially valued in this respect.

The presentation of documentation issued by the competent authorities, indicating that the centre routinely undertakes teaching activities for ongoing training of healthcare professionals in aspects related to the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of smoking will likewise be particularly valued. The number of courses, conferences and other teaching meetings held by the members of the centre in the last two years must be specified. At least four ongoing training activities must have been carried out each year in order to obtain accreditation as a specialized smoking cessation unit.

Certification from the teaching commission of a healthcare centre or hospital confirming that the residents in training in medicine or psychology rotate through the unit will be particularly valued.

Research activities

The specialized tobacco cessation unit must show adequate research activity in the form of epidemiological and clinical research or basic research studies.

Tobacco cessation services have to assess their activity and provide data. Data provided will inform possible research projects and improve the practice of tobacco dependence diagnosis, prevention and treatment.

Tobacco cessation services may participate in academic research. With the support of an accredited body, tobacco cessation services may participate in management or academic research.

Tobacco cessation services should report on their activities annually, specifically ensuring that:
- the number of new patients and follow-up visits are recorded;
- the six-month checked tobacco cessation is recorded for all patients who visit the tobacco cessation service;
- standardized computer records for tobacco cessation recording are used.

For Gold Level accreditation, the necessary documentation demonstrating the research activity of the unit in the past five years must be presented. The following documentation must be submitted: scientific publications (at least three in national or international journals), communications at international congresses (at least three), and communications at national congresses (at least six).

Role of tobacco cessation services in health promotion

TCSs have to promote healthy lifestyles without tobacco among the general public, among tobacco users with or without associated disease. They should do so for patients who attend the service and within the community.

Recommendation:

When implementing the standardised European accreditation system based on common ENSP - Quality Standards we should be aware and we should respect the diversity of the 53 Member States in the WHO European Region[4] with different structures and organizations in their health and educational systems.

References

1 *Spanish Respiratory Society (SEPAR) - Guide for the Accreditation of Smoking Cessation Services. Dr. Carlos A. Jiménez-Ruiz, Dr. Segismundo Solano-Reina, Dr. José Carlos Rebollo-Serrano, Cristina Esquinas (nurse), *Executive Committee, Smoking Cessation Group. SEPAR www.separ.es*

2 *e.SCANN 2010 Report – The European Tobacco Cessation Clinics Assessment and Networking Project www.ofta-asso.fr/escann*

3 *http://www.tabaccologia.it/filedirectory/PDF/4_2010/Tabaccologia_4-2010.pdf*

4 *http://www.euro.who.int/en/where-we-work*

Tobacco cessation service self audit		no implementation (0)	some implementation (0)	half implementation (0)	near totally implementation (0)	YES fully (0)	Non applicable (NA)	Observations
1.	**The tobacco cessation service states clearly that the service is dedicated to caring for tobacco users and conducting tobacco cessation**							GOAL
1.01	Word "tobacco" (or equivalent) is present on print document of TCS and on the building entrance	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
1.02	Word "tobacco" (or equivalent) is present on the internet presentation of service	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
1.03	A specific phone number exists to reach a tobacco cessation health professionnel of TCS	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
1.04	If roster of TCS exists at regional or national level, TCS is on the list	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.	**Tobacco cessation service makes best effort to have sufficient human and materiel resources to accomplish his mission.**							RESOURCE
2.01	Staff time is suffisant to insure less 3 weeks delay for a first visit rendez-vous	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.02	All staff is well trained in smoking cessation	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.03	At least half of the staff is certified as tobacco cessation specialist	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.04	Presciption is fully available	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.05	There is a quiet room > 10m2 for consultation	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.06	There is one CO testeur/600 visits a year	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.07	There is computer in consultation room	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.08	Autoevaluation questionnaires as Fagerstrom nicotine dependance test are available for smokers	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
2.09	There is available medication or display of medication to show to smoker	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
3.	**TCS receives all smokers, but cares for the more severe cases. If service decides to receive only specific population, e.g. pregnant women, this decision is clearly indicated.**							PUBLIC
3.01	> 50% of new patients have comorbidity, coaddiction, pregnancy or low incomes	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
3.02	Specificity of population who may access to the TCS are clearly stated (NB: 4 if no restriction to access)	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
4.	**Tobacco cessation service respect best practice and validated guidelines related to smoking cessation.**							BEST PRACTICE
4.01	Recommandations of good practice are listed and applied	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
4.02	First visit time duration is at least 1/2 hour	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
4.03	TCs disseminate good practice of cessation for health professionnals who are not tabacco cessation specialists	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
5.	**Tobacco cessation service participates to the education and training of health professional on smoking cessation.**							EDUCATION
5.01	TCS participate to education of medical doctor on tobacco dependance evaluation and tobacco cessation	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
5.02	TCS participate to education and training of non medical health professionnals on tobacco dependance	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
6.	**TCS record and provide data to local and/or national evaluation of smoking cessation**							RESEARCH
6.01	TCS record and provide data to local and/or national evaluation of smoking cessation	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
6.02	TCS participe to academic research on tobacco dependance	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
7.	**Tobacco cessation service conduct on routine base actions of health promotion in connection with the community**							HEALTH PROMOTION
7.01	TCS conduct this year or past year action in health promotion	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
8.	**Tobacco cessation service asses his activity and proceed to continuous improvement according to feed back of assessment.**							EVALUATION
8.01	6 month abstincence is recorded and assessed	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
8.02	Statistic of result of smoking cessation are available	0 ☐	1 ☐	2 ☐	3 ☐	4 ☐	NA ☐	
								TOTAL/ 100

CENTER	DATE	TOTAL

List of tables

List of figures

All web addresses contained in this document were verified and functional on 21st September 2012.

Connecting • Sharing • Advocating

Saving Lives

Chaussée d'Ixelles 144, B-1050 Brussels, Belgium
Tel. : +32 2 2306515, Fax: +32 2 2307507
E-mail: info@ensp.org
www.ensp.org

European Network for Smoking and Tobacco Prevention
is a recipient of
World Health Organization
"World No Tobacco Day 2011" Award

ISBN 978-2-9600708-1-1